*TEI schema for linguistically annotated corpora of CLARIN.SI*

Tomaž Erjavec, tomaz.erjavec@ijs.si

A TEI schema for linguistically annotated corpora, primarily meant as example of good practice for [CLARIN.SI](http://www-clarin.si/). This is a very general TEI schema - for actual practice, the companion document *tei\_clarin\_example.xml* should be consluted.

# Elements

## <TEI>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<TEI>** (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the model.resourceLike class. Multiple <TEI> elements may be combined to form a <teiCorpus> element. [[4. Default Text Structure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS) [15.1. Varieties of Composite Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **version** | specifies the major version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.version](#teidata.version) | | **Note** | The major version number is historically prefixed by a P (for Proposal), and is distinct from the version number used for individual releases of the Guidelines, as used by (for example) the *@source* of the <schemaSpec> element. The current version is P5. | | |
| **Contained by** | **core:** teiCorpus |
| **May contain** | **header:** teiHeader  **iso-fs:** fsdDecl  **textstructure:** text |
| **Note** | This element is required. It is customary to specify the TEI namespace http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0 on it, using the *@xmlns* attribute. |
| **Example** | <**TEI** **version**="5.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  <**teiHeader**>   <**fileDesc**>    <**titleStmt**>     <**title**>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</**title**>    </**titleStmt**>    <**publicationStmt**>     <**p**>First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5          version using a name space.</**p**>    </**publicationStmt**>    <**sourceDesc**>     <**p**>No source: this is an original work.</**p**>    </**sourceDesc**>   </**fileDesc**>  </**teiHeader**>  <**text**>   <**body**>    <**p**>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</**p**>   </**body**>  </**text**> </**TEI**> |
| **Example** | <**TEI** **version**="5.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  <**teiHeader**>   <**fileDesc**>    <**titleStmt**>     <**title**>A TEI Document containing four page images </**title**>    </**titleStmt**>    <**publicationStmt**>     <**p**>Unpublished demonstration file.</**p**>    </**publicationStmt**>    <**sourceDesc**>     <**p**>No source: this is an original work.</**p**>    </**sourceDesc**>   </**fileDesc**>  </**teiHeader**>  <**facsimile**>   <**graphic** **url**="page1.png"/>   <**graphic** **url**="page2.png"/>   <**graphic** **url**="page3.png"/>   <**graphic** **url**="page4.png"/>  </**facsimile**> </**TEI**> |
| **Schematron** | <s:ns prefix="tei"  uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/> <s:ns prefix="xs"  uri="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"/> |
| **Schematron** | <s:ns prefix="rng"  uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>   <classRef key="model.resourceLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element TEI {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute version { text }?,  ( [tei\_teiHeader](#TEI.tei_teiHeader), [tei\_model.resourceLike](#TEI.tei_model.resourceLike)+ ) } |

## <ab>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<ab>** (anonymous block) contains any arbitrary component-level unit of text, acting as an anonymous container for phrase or inter level elements analogous to, but without the semantic baggage of, a paragraph. [[16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASE)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) att.fragmentable (@part) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.pLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** item note q quote said sp stage  **corpus:** particDesc setting settingDesc  **header:** abstract application availability cRefPattern calendar change correction correspAction correspContext correspDesc editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc hyphenation interpretation langUsage licence normalization prefixDef projectDesc publicationStmt punctuation quotation refsDecl samplingDecl segmentation seriesStmt sourceDesc stdVals styleDefDecl  **textstructure:** back body div front postscript |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | The <ab> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any component-level elements in a text for which no other more specific appropriate markup is defined. |
| **Example** | <**div** **n**="Genesis" **type**="book">  <**div** **n**="1" **type**="chapter">   <**ab**>In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.</**ab**>   <**ab**>And the earth was without form, and void; and      darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the      spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.</**ab**>   <**ab**>And God said, Let there be light: and there was light.</**ab**> <!-- ...-->  </**div**> </**div**> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="not(ancestor::floatingText) and (ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(parent::tei:exemplum |parent::tei:item |parent::tei:note |parent::tei:q |parent::tei:quote |parent::tei:remarks |parent::tei:said |parent::tei:sp |parent::tei:stage |parent::tei:cell |parent::tei:figure)"> Abstract model violation: ab may not contain paragraphs or other ab elements. </s:report> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l or ancestor::tei:lg"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level divisions such as p or ab. </s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element ab {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declaring),  [tei\_att.fragmentable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.fragmentable),  [tei\_att.written.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.written),  [tei\_macro.paraContent](#TEI.tei_macro.paraContent)} |

## <abbr>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<abbr>** (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort. [[3.5.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAB)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | allows the encoder to classify the abbreviation according to some convenient typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Sample values include:** | **suspension** the abbreviation provides the first letter(s) of the word or phrase, omitting the remainder.  **contraction** the abbreviation omits some letter(s) in the middle.  **brevigraph** the abbreviation comprises a special symbol or mark.  **superscription** the abbreviation includes writing above the line.  **acronym** the abbreviation comprises the initial letters of the words of a phrase.  **title** the abbreviation is for a title of address (Dr, Ms, Mr, …)  **organization** the abbreviation is for the name of an organization.  **geographic** the abbreviation is for a geographic name. | | **Note** | The *@type* attribute is provided for the sake of those who wish to classify abbreviations at their point of occurrence; this may be useful in some circumstances, though usually the same abbreviation will have the same type in all occurrences. As the sample values make clear, abbreviations may be classified by the method used to construct them, the method of writing them, or the referent of the term abbreviated; the typology used is up to the encoder and should be carefully planned to meet the needs of the expected use. For a typology of Middle English abbreviations, see <#PETTY> | | |
| **Member of** | model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl pc phr s span w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | The <abbr> tag is not required; if appropriate, the encoder may transcribe abbreviations in the source text silently, without tagging them. If abbreviations are not transcribed directly but *expanded* silently, then the TEI header should so indicate. |
| **Example** | <**choice**>  <**expan**>North Atlantic Treaty Organization</**expan**>  <**abbr** **cert**="low">NorATO</**abbr**>  <**abbr** **cert**="high">NATO</**abbr**>  <**abbr** **cert**="high" **xml:lang**="fr">OTAN</**abbr**> </**choice**> |
| **Example** | <**choice**>  <**abbr**>SPQR</**abbr**>  <**expan**>senatus populusque romanorum</**expan**> </**choice**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element abbr {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <abstract>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<abstract>** contains a summary or formal abstract prefixed to an existing source document by the encoder. [[2.4.4. Abstracts](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4ABS)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.profileDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** profileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** list p  **linking:** ab |
| **Note** | This element is intended only for cases where no abstract is available in the original source. Any abstract already present in the source document should be encoded as a <div> within the <front>, as it should for a born-digital document. |
| **Example** | <**profileDesc**>  <**abstract** **resp**="#LB">   <**p**>Good database design involves the acquisition and deployment of      skills which have a wider relevance to the educational process. From      a set of more or less instinctive rules of thumb a formal discipline      or "methodology" of database design has evolved. Applying that      methodology can be of great benefit to a very wide range of academic      subjects: it requires fundamental skills of abstraction and      generalisation and it provides a simple mechanism whereby complex      ideas and information structures can be represented and manipulated,      even without the use of a computer. </**p**>  </**abstract**> </**profileDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="1">   <classRef key="model.pLike"/>   <classRef key="model.listLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element abstract {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  ( [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike) | [tei\_model.listLike](#TEI.tei_model.listLike) )+ } |

## <activity>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<activity>** contains a brief informal description of what a participant in a language interaction is doing other than speaking, if anything. [[15.2.3. The Setting Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHSE)] | |
| **Module** | corpus |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.settingPart |
| **Contained by** | **corpus:** setting |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  character data |
| **Note** | For more fine-grained description of participant activities during a spoken text, the <event> element should be used. |
| **Example** | <**activity**>driving</**activity**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element activity { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited) } |

## <add>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<add>** (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [[3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDADD)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.transcriptional (@status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) ) (att.written (@hand)) att.placement (@place) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl pc phr s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **header:** change distributor edition extent geoDecl licence  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | In a diplomatic edition attempting to represent an original source, the <add> element should not be used for additions to the current TEI electronic edition made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <corr> or <supplied> element are recommended.  In a TEI edition of a historical text with previous editorial emendations in which such additions or reconstructions are considered part of the source text, the use of <add> may be appropriate, dependent on the editorial philosophy of the project. |
| **Example** | The story I am  going to relate is true as to its main facts, and as to the  consequences <**add** **place**="above">of these facts</**add**> from which  this tale takes its title. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element add {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.transcriptional.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.transcriptional),  [tei\_att.placement.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.placement),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_macro.paraContent](#TEI.tei_macro.paraContent)} |

## <addrLine>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<addrLine>** (address line) contains one line of a postal address. [[3.5.2. Addresses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAD) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24) [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.addrPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the model.addrPart class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an <address> element directly but may be wrapped within an <addrLine> if they form part of the printed address in some source text. |
| **Example** | <**address**>  <**addrLine**>Computing Center, MC 135</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>P.O. Box 6998</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>Chicago, IL</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>60680 USA</**addrLine**> </**address**> |
| **Example** | <**addrLine**>  <**ref** **target**="tel:+1-201-555-0123">(201) 555 0123</**ref**> </**addrLine**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element addrLine { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq) } |

## <address>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<address>** contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual. [[3.5.2. Addresses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAD) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24) [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.addressLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s span  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal publicationStmt rendition sponsor tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** addrLine cb gap index lb milestone name note pb postBox postCode rs street  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline |
| **Note** | This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element <addrLine> may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements available from the model.addrPart class, such as <street>, <postCode> etc. |
| **Example** | Using just the elements defined by the core module, an address could be represented as follows:  <**address**>  <**street**>via Marsala 24</**street**>  <**postCode**>40126</**postCode**>  <**name**>Bologna</**name**>  <**name**>Italy</**name**> </**address**> |
| **Example** | When a schema includes the names and dates module more specific elements such as country or settlement would be preferable over generic <name>:  <**address**>  <**street**>via Marsala 24</**street**>  <**postCode**>40126</**postCode**>  <**settlement**>Bologna</**settlement**>  <**country**>Italy</**country**> </**address**> |
| **Example** | <**address**>  <**addrLine**>Computing Center, MC 135</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>P.O. Box 6998</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>Chicago, IL 60680</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>USA</**addrLine**> </**address**> |
| **Example** | <**address**>  <**country** **key**="FR"/>  <**settlement** **type**="city">Lyon</**settlement**>  <**postCode**>69002</**postCode**>  <**district** **type**="arrondissement">IIème</**district**>  <**district** **type**="quartier">Perrache</**district**>  <**street**>   <**num**>30</**num**>, Cours de Verdun</**street**> </**address**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.global"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.addrPart"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element address {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  ( [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\*, ( [tei\_model.addrPart](#TEI.tei_model.addrPart), [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\* )+ ) } |

## <alt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<alt>** (alternation) identifies an alternation or a set of choices among elements or passages. [[16.8. Alternation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAAT)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.pointing (target, @targetLang, @evaluate)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **target** | specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.pointing | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 2–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | | **mode** | states whether the alternations gathered in this collection are exclusive or inclusive.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **excl** (exclusive) indicates that the alternation is exclusive, i.e. that at most one of the alternatives occurs.  **incl** (inclusive) indicates that the alternation is not exclusive, i.e. that one or more of the alternatives occur. | | | **weights** | If *@mode* is excl, each weight states the probability that the corresponding alternative occurs. If *@mode* is incl each weight states the probability that the corresponding alternative occurs given that at least one of the other alternatives occurs.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 2–∞ occurrences of [teidata.probability](#teidata.probability) separated by whitespace | | **Note** | If *@mode* is excl, the sum of weights must be 1. If *@mode* is incl, the sum of weights must be in the range from 0 to the number of alternants. | | |
| **Member of** | model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl m phr s span w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** ab altGrp seg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Example** | <**alt** **mode**="excl" **target**="#we.fun #we.sun"  **weights**="0.5 0.5"/> |
| **Content model** | <content> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element alt {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.pointing.attribute.targetLang](#TEI.tei_att.pointing),  [tei\_att.pointing.attribute.evaluate](#TEI.tei_att.pointing),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute target { list { \* } }?,  attribute mode { "excl" | "incl" }?,  attribute weights { list { \* } }?,  empty } |

## <altGrp>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<altGrp>** (alternation group) groups a collection of <alt> elements and possibly pointers. [[16.8. Alternation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAAT)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing.group (@domains, @targFunc) (att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)) (att.typed (@type, @subtype))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **mode** | states whether the alternations gathered in this collection are exclusive or inclusive.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **excl** (exclusive) indicates that the alternation is exclusive, i.e. that at most one of the alternatives occurs. [Default]  **incl** (inclusive) indicates that the alternation is not exclusive, i.e. that one or more of the alternatives occur. | | |
| **Member of** | model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl m phr s span w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** ptr  **linking:** alt |
| **Note** | Any number of alternations, pointers or extended pointers. |
| **Example** | <**altGrp** **mode**="excl">  <**alt** **target**="#dm #lt #bb"   **weights**="0.5 0.25 0.25"/>  <**alt** **target**="#rl #db" **weights**="0.5 0.5"/> </**altGrp**> |
| **Example** | <**altGrp** **mode**="incl">  <**alt** **target**="#dm #rl" **weights**="0.90 0.90"/>  <**alt** **target**="#lt #rl" **weights**="0.5 0.5"/>  <**alt** **target**="#bb #rl" **weights**="0.5 0.5"/>  <**alt** **target**="#dm #db" **weights**="0.10 0.10"/>  <**alt** **target**="#lt #db" **weights**="0.45 0.90"/>  <**alt** **target**="#bb #db" **weights**="0.45 0.90"/> </**altGrp**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <elementRef key="alt"/>   <elementRef key="ptr"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element altGrp {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.pointing.group.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.pointing.group),  attribute mode { "excl" | "incl" }?,  ( [tei\_alt](#TEI.tei_alt) | [tei\_ptr](#TEI.tei_ptr) )\* } |

## <analytic>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<analytic>** (analytic level) contains bibliographic elements describing an item (e.g. an article or poem) published within a monograph or journal and not as an independent publication. [[3.11.2.1. Analytic, Monographic, and Series Levels](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOL)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** biblStruct |
| **May contain** | **core:** author date editor ptr ref respStmt textLang title  **header:** availability idno |
| **Note** | May contain titles and statements of responsibility (author, editor, or other), in any order.  The <analytic> element may only occur within a <biblStruct>, where its use is mandatory for the description of an analytic level bibliographic item. |
| **Example** | <**biblStruct**>  <**analytic**>   <**author**>Chesnutt, David</**author**>   <**title**>Historical Editions in the States</**title**>  </**analytic**>  <**monogr**>   <**title** **level**="j">Computers and the Humanities</**title**>   <**imprint**>    <**date** **when**="1991-12">(December, 1991):</**date**>   </**imprint**>   <**biblScope**>25.6</**biblScope**>   <**biblScope**>377–380</**biblScope**>  </**monogr**> </**biblStruct**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <elementRef key="author"/>   <elementRef key="editor"/>   <elementRef key="respStmt"/>   <elementRef key="title"/>   <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>   <elementRef key="date"/>   <elementRef key="textLang"/>   <elementRef key="idno"/>   <elementRef key="availability"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element analytic {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  (  [tei\_author](#TEI.tei_author) | [tei\_editor](#TEI.tei_editor) | [tei\_respStmt](#TEI.tei_respStmt) | [tei\_title](#TEI.tei_title) | [tei\_model.ptrLike](#TEI.tei_model.ptrLike) | [tei\_date](#TEI.tei_date) | [tei\_textLang](#TEI.tei_textLang) | [tei\_idno](#TEI.tei_idno) | [tei\_availability](#TEI.tei_availability) )\* } |

## <anchor>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<anchor>** (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element. [[8.4.2. Synchronization and Overlap](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSSAPA) [16.5. Correspondence and Alignment](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SACS)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.milestoneLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl m phr s span w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | On this element, the global *@xml:id* attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for the point at which this element occurs within a document. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence. |
| **Example** | <**s**>The anchor is he<**anchor** **xml:id**="A234"/>re somewhere.</**s**> <**s**>Help me find it.<**ptr** **target**="#A234"/> </**s**> |
| **Content model** | <content> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element anchor { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed), empty } |

## <appInfo>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<appInfo>** (application information) records information about an application which has edited the TEI file. [[2.3.10. The Application Information Element](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HDAPP)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **header:** application |
| **Example** | <**appInfo**>  <**application** **ident**="Xaira" **version**="1.24">   <**label**>XAIRA Indexer</**label**>   <**ptr** **target**="#P1"/>  </**application**> </**appInfo**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.applicationLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element appInfo { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_model.applicationLike](#TEI.tei_model.applicationLike)+ } |

## <application>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<application>** provides information about an application which has acted upon the document. [[2.3.10. The Application Information Element](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HDAPP)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **ident** | supplies an identifier for the application, independent of its version number or display name.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [teidata.name](#teidata.name) | | | **version** | supplies a version number for the application, independent of its identifier or display name.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [teidata.versionNumber](#teidata.versionNumber) | | |
| **Member of** | model.applicationLike |
| **Contained by** | **header:** appInfo |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc label p ptr ref  **linking:** ab |
| **Example** | <**appInfo**>  <**application** **ident**="ImageMarkupTool1"   **notAfter**="2006-06-01" **version**="1.5">   <**label**>Image Markup Tool</**label**>   <**ptr** **target**="#P1"/>   <**ptr** **target**="#P2"/>  </**application**> </**appInfo**>  This example shows an appInfo element documenting the fact that version 1.5 of the Image Markup Tool1 application has an interest in two parts of a document which was last saved on June 6 2006. The parts concerned are accessible at the URLs given as target for the two <ptr> elements. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.labelLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.ptrLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>    <classRef key="model.pLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element application {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  attribute ident { text },  attribute version { text },  ( [tei\_model.labelLike](#TEI.tei_model.labelLike)+, ( [tei\_model.ptrLike](#TEI.tei_model.ptrLike)\* | [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)\* ) ) } |

## <author>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<author>** in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority. [[3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR) [2.2.1. The Title Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** analytic bibl monogr  **header:** editionStmt titleStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes *@key* or *@ref* may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource.  In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast.  Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as Unknown or Anonymous. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given. |
| **Example** | <**author**>British Broadcasting Corporation</**author**> <**author**>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de (1634–1693)</**author**> <**author**>Anonymous</**author**> <**author**>Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation</**author**> <**author**>  <**persName**>Beaumont, Francis</**persName**> and <**persName**>John Fletcher</**persName**> </**author**> <**author**>  <**orgName** **key**="BBC">British Broadcasting    Corporation</**orgName**>: Radio 3 Network </**author**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element author {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <authority>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<authority>** (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making a work available, other than a publisher or distributor. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.publicationStmtPart.agency |
| **Contained by** | **core:** monogr  **header:** publicationStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**authority**>John Smith</**authority**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element authority { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited) } |

## <availability>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<availability>** supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **status** | supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **free** the text is freely available.  **unknown** the status of the text is unknown. [Default] [Deprecated](http://www.tei-c.org/Activities/Council/Working/tcw27.xml). The value will no longer be a default after 2017-09-05.  **restricted** the text is not freely available. | | |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **core:** analytic bibl monogr series  **header:** publicationStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **header:** licence  **linking:** ab |
| **Note** | A consistent format should be adopted |
| **Example** | <**availability** **status**="restricted">  <**p**>Available for academic research purposes only.</**p**> </**availability**> <**availability** **status**="free">  <**p**>In the public domain</**p**> </**availability**> <**availability** **status**="restricted">  <**p**>Available under licence from the publishers.</**p**> </**availability**> |
| **Example** | <**availability**>  <**licence** **target**="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT">   <**p**>The MIT License      applies to this document.</**p**>   <**p**>Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria</**p**>   <**p**>Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy      of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal      in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights      to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell      copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is      furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:</**p**>   <**p**>The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in      all copies or substantial portions of the Software.</**p**>   <**p**>THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR      IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY,      FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE      AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER      LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM,      OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN      THE SOFTWARE.</**p**>  </**licence**> </**availability**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="1">   <classRef key="model.availabilityPart"/>   <classRef key="model.pLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element availability {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  attribute status { "free" | "unknown" | "restricted" }?,  ( [tei\_model.availabilityPart](#TEI.tei_model.availabilityPart) | [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike) )+ } |

## <back>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<back>** (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text. [[4.7. Back Matter](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSBACK) [4. Default Text Structure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** text |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** cb divGen gap head index lb list listBibl milestone note p pb  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  **textstructure:** byline closer div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle postscript signed titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **Note** | Because cultural conventions differ as to which elements are grouped as back matter and which as front matter, the content models for the <back> and <front> elements are identical. |
| **Example** | <**back**>  <**div** **type**="appendix">   <**head**>The Golden Dream or, the Ingenuous Confession</**head**>   <**p**>TO shew the Depravity of human Nature, and how apt the Mind is to be misled by Trinkets      and false Appearances, Mrs. Two-Shoes does acknowledge, that after she became rich, she      had like to have been, too fond of Money  <!-- .... -->   </**p**>  </**div**> <!-- ... -->  <**div** **type**="epistle">   <**head**>A letter from the Printer, which he desires may be inserted</**head**>   <**salute**>Sir.</**salute**>   <**p**>I have done with your Copy, so you may return it to the Vatican, if you please;    <!-- ... -->   </**p**>  </**div**>  <**div** **type**="advert">   <**head**>The Books usually read by the Scholars of Mrs Two-Shoes are these and are sold at Mr      Newbery's at the Bible and Sun in St Paul's Church-yard.</**head**>   <**list**>    <**item** **n**="1">The Christmas Box, Price 1d.</**item**>    <**item** **n**="2">The History of Giles Gingerbread, 1d.</**item**> <!-- ... -->    <**item** **n**="42">A Curious Collection of Travels, selected from the Writers of all Nations,        10 Vol, Pr. bound 1l.</**item**>   </**list**>  </**div**>  <**div** **type**="advert">   <**head**>By the KING's Royal Patent, Are sold by J. NEWBERY, at the Bible and Sun in St.      Paul's Church-Yard.</**head**>   <**list**>    <**item** **n**="1">Dr. James's Powders for Fevers, the Small-Pox, Measles, Colds, &amp;c. 2s.        6d</**item**>    <**item** **n**="2">Dr. Hooper's Female Pills, 1s.</**item**> <!-- ... -->   </**list**>  </**div**> </**back**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>    <classRef key="model.pLike.front"/>    <classRef key="model.pLike"/>    <classRef key="model.listLike"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>   </alternate>   <alternate minOccurs="0">    <sequence>     <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>      <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>      <classRef key="model.global"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>    <sequence>     <classRef key="model.divLike"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>      <classRef key="model.divLike"/>      <classRef key="model.global"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>   </alternate>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>     <classRef key="model.global"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element back {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declaring),  (  (  [tei\_model.frontPart](#TEI.tei_model.frontPart) | [tei\_model.pLike.front](#TEI.tei_model.pLike.front) | [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike) | [tei\_model.listLike](#TEI.tei_model.listLike) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\*,  (  (  [tei\_model.div1Like](#TEI.tei_model.div1Like),  ( [tei\_model.frontPart](#TEI.tei_model.frontPart) | [tei\_model.div1Like](#TEI.tei_model.div1Like) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\*  )  | (  [tei\_model.divLike](#TEI.tei_model.divLike),  ( [tei\_model.frontPart](#TEI.tei_model.frontPart) | [tei\_model.divLike](#TEI.tei_model.divLike) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\*  )  )?,  (  [tei\_model.divBottomPart](#TEI.tei_model.divBottomPart),  ( [tei\_model.divBottomPart](#TEI.tei_model.divBottomPart) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\*  )?  ) } |

## <bibl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<bibl>** (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged. [[3.11.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBITY) [2.2.7. The Source Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.docStatus (@status) |
| **Member of** | model.biblLike model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add bibl cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl meeting note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem said sic stage title unclear  **header:** change licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** body div docEdition imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address author bibl biblScope cb choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp meeting mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr pubPlace publisher ref reg relatedItem respStmt rs series sic soCalled term textLang time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** availability distributor edition extent funder idno principal sponsor  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | Contains phrase-level elements, together with any combination of elements from the model.biblPart class |
| **Example** | <**bibl**>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale,  1990)</**bibl**> |
| **Example** | <**bibl**>  <**title** **level**="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</**title**>. In <**author**>Victor E Neuberg</**author**>, <**title**>The Penny Histories</**title**>. <**publisher**>OUP</**publisher**>  <**date**>1968</**date**>.  </**bibl**> |
| **Example** | <**bibl** **subtype**="book\_chapter" **type**="article"  **xml:id**="carlin\_2003">  <**author**>   <**name**>    <**surname**>Carlin</**surname**>      (<**forename**>Claire</**forename**>)</**name**>  </**author**>, <**title** **level**="a">The Staging of Impotence : France’s last    congrès</**title**> dans <**bibl** **type**="monogr">   <**title** **level**="m">Theatrum mundi : studies in honor of Ronald W.      Tobin</**title**>, éd.  <**editor**>    <**name**>     <**forename**>Claire</**forename**>     <**surname**>Carlin</**surname**>    </**name**>   </**editor**> et  <**editor**>    <**name**>     <**forename**>Kathleen</**forename**>     <**surname**>Wine</**surname**>    </**name**>   </**editor**>,  <**pubPlace**>Charlottesville, Va.</**pubPlace**>,  <**publisher**>Rookwood Press</**publisher**>,  <**date** **when**="2003">2003</**date**>.  </**bibl**> </**bibl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.highlighted"/>   <classRef key="model.pPart.data"/>   <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>   <classRef key="model.segLike"/>   <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>   <classRef key="model.biblPart"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element bibl {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  [tei\_att.docStatus.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.docStatus),  (  text  | [tei\_model.gLike](#TEI.tei_model.gLike) | [tei\_model.highlighted](#TEI.tei_model.highlighted) | [tei\_model.pPart.data](#TEI.tei_model.pPart.data) | [tei\_model.pPart.edit](#TEI.tei_model.pPart.edit) | [tei\_model.segLike](#TEI.tei_model.segLike) | [tei\_model.ptrLike](#TEI.tei_model.ptrLike) | [tei\_model.biblPart](#TEI.tei_model.biblPart) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\* } |

## <biblFull>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<biblFull>** (fully-structured bibliographic citation) contains a fully-structured bibliographic citation, in which all components of the TEI file description are present. [[3.11.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBITY) [2.2. The File Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2) [2.2.7. The Source Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.docStatus (@status) |
| **Member of** | model.biblLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl meeting note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem said sic stage title unclear  **header:** change licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** body div docEdition imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **header:** editionStmt extent fileDesc notesStmt profileDesc publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc titleStmt |
| **Example** | <**biblFull**>  <**titleStmt**>   <**title**>The Feminist Companion to Literature in English: women writers from the middle ages      to the present</**title**>   <**author**>Blain, Virginia</**author**>   <**author**>Clements, Patricia</**author**>   <**author**>Grundy, Isobel</**author**>  </**titleStmt**>  <**editionStmt**>   <**edition**>UK edition</**edition**>  </**editionStmt**>  <**extent**>1231 pp</**extent**>  <**publicationStmt**>   <**publisher**>Yale University Press</**publisher**>   <**pubPlace**>New Haven and London</**pubPlace**>   <**date**>1990</**date**>  </**publicationStmt**>  <**sourceDesc**>   <**p**>No source: this is an original work</**p**>  </**sourceDesc**> </**biblFull**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <sequence>    <sequence>     <elementRef key="titleStmt"/>     <elementRef key="editionStmt"      minOccurs="0"/>     <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/>     <elementRef key="publicationStmt"/>     <elementRef key="seriesStmt"      minOccurs="0"/>     <elementRef key="notesStmt"      minOccurs="0"/>    </sequence>    <elementRef key="sourceDesc"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>   <sequence>    <elementRef key="fileDesc"/>    <elementRef key="profileDesc"/>   </sequence>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element biblFull {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  [tei\_att.docStatus.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.docStatus),  (  (  (  [tei\_titleStmt](#TEI.tei_titleStmt),  [tei\_editionStmt](#TEI.tei_editionStmt)?,  [tei\_extent](#TEI.tei_extent)?,  [tei\_publicationStmt](#TEI.tei_publicationStmt),  [tei\_seriesStmt](#TEI.tei_seriesStmt)?,  [tei\_notesStmt](#TEI.tei_notesStmt)?  ),  [tei\_sourceDesc](#TEI.tei_sourceDesc)\*  )  | ( [tei\_fileDesc](#TEI.tei_fileDesc), [tei\_profileDesc](#TEI.tei_profileDesc) )  ) } |

## <biblScope>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<biblScope>** (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work. [[3.11.2.5. Scopes and Ranges in Bibliographic Citations](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOB)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.citing (@unit, @from, @to) |
| **Member of** | model.imprintPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl imprint monogr series  **header:** seriesStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | When a single page is being cited, use the *@from* and *@to* attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is provided, the *@from* attribute may be used without *@to*; for example a citation such as ‘p. 3ff’ might be encoded <biblScope from="3">p. 3ff<biblScope>.  It is now considered good practice to supply this element as a sibling (rather than a child) of <imprint>, since it supplies information which does not constitute part of the imprint. |
| **Example** | <**biblScope**>pp 12–34</**biblScope**> <**biblScope** **from**="12" **to**="34" **unit**="page"/> <**biblScope** **unit**="volume">II</**biblScope**> <**biblScope** **unit**="page">12</**biblScope**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element biblScope {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.citing.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.citing),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <biblStruct>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<biblStruct>** (structured bibliographic citation) contains a structured bibliographic citation, in which only bibliographic sub-elements appear and in a specified order. [[3.11.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBITY) [2.2.7. The Source Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.docStatus (@status) |
| **Member of** | model.biblLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl meeting note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem said sic stage title unclear  **header:** change licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** body div docEdition imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** analytic citedRange monogr note ptr ref relatedItem series |
| **Example** | <**biblStruct**>  <**monogr**>   <**author**>Blain, Virginia</**author**>   <**author**>Clements, Patricia</**author**>   <**author**>Grundy, Isobel</**author**>   <**title**>The Feminist Companion to Literature in English: women writers from the middle ages      to the present</**title**>   <**edition**>first edition</**edition**>   <**imprint**>    <**publisher**>Yale University Press</**publisher**>    <**pubPlace**>New Haven and London</**pubPlace**>    <**date**>1990</**date**>   </**imprint**>  </**monogr**> </**biblStruct**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="analytic"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <elementRef key="monogr"/>    <elementRef key="series"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>    <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>    <elementRef key="relatedItem"/>    <elementRef key="citedRange"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element biblStruct {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  [tei\_att.docStatus.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.docStatus),  (  [tei\_analytic](#TEI.tei_analytic)\*,  ( [tei\_monogr](#TEI.tei_monogr), [tei\_series](#TEI.tei_series)\* )+,  (  [tei\_model.noteLike](#TEI.tei_model.noteLike) | [tei\_model.ptrLike](#TEI.tei_model.ptrLike) | [tei\_relatedItem](#TEI.tei_relatedItem) | [tei\_citedRange](#TEI.tei_citedRange) )\*  ) } |

## <binary>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<binary>** (binary value) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which can contain either of exactly two possible values. [[18.2. Elementary Feature Structures and the Binary Feature Value](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FSBI)] | |
| **Module** | iso-fs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **value** | supplies a binary value.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [teidata.truthValue](#teidata.truthValue) | | **Note** | This attribute has a datatype of data.truthValue, which may be represented by the values 1 or true, or 0 or false. | | |
| **Member of** | model.featureVal.single |
| **Contained by** | **iso-fs:** f fvLib vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vRange |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | The value attribute may take any value permitted for attributes of the W3C datatype Boolean: this includes for example the strings true or 1 which are equivalent. |
| **Example** | <**f** **name**="strident">  <**binary** **value**="true"/> </**f**> <**f** **name**="exclusive">  <**binary** **value**="false"/> </**f**> |
| **Content model** | <content> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element binary {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datcat.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datcat),  attribute value { text },  empty } |

## <binaryObject>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<binaryObject>** provides encoded binary data representing an inline graphic, audio, video or other object. [[3.9. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COGR)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.media (@width, @height, @scale) (att.internetMedia (@mimeType)) att.timed (@start, @end) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **encoding** | The encoding used to encode the binary data. If not specified, this is assumed to be [Base64](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Base64).   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.word](#teidata.word) separated by whitespace | | |
| **Member of** | model.graphicLike model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **gaiji:** char glyph  **header:** change distributor edition extent geoDecl licence  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | Character data only |
| **Example** | <**binaryObject** **mimeType**="image/gif"> R0lGODdhMAAwAPAAAAAAAP///ywAAAAAMAAwAAAC8IyPqcvt3wCcDkiLc7C0qwy  GHhSWpjQu5yqmCYsapyuvUUlvONmOZtfzgFzByTB10QgxOR0TqBQejhRNzOfkVJ  +5YiUqrXF5Y5lKh/DeuNcP5yLWGsEbtLiOSpa/TPg7JpJHxyendzWTBfX0cxOnK  PjgBzi4diinWGdkF8kjdfnycQZXZeYGejmJlZeGl9i2icVqaNVailT6F5iJ90m6  mvuTS4OK05M0vDk0Q4XUtwvKOzrcd3iq9uisF81M1OIcR7lEewwcLp7tuNNkM3u  Nna3F2JQFo97Vriy/Xl4/f1cf5VWzXyym7PH hhx4dbgYKAAA7</**binaryObject**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element binaryObject {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.media.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.media),  [tei\_att.timed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.timed),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute encoding { list { + } }?,  text } |

## <body>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<body>** (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [[4. Default Text Structure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** text |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** bibl biblStruct cb cit desc divGen gap head index l label lb lg list listBibl meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage  **header:** biblFull  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate opener postscript salute signed trailer |
| **Example** | <**body**>  <**l**>Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard</**l**>  <**l**>metudæs maecti end his modgidanc</**l**>  <**l**>uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gihuaes</**l**>  <**l**>eci dryctin or astelidæ</**l**>  <**l**>he aerist scop aelda barnum</**l**>  <**l**>heben til hrofe haleg scepen.</**l**>  <**l**>tha middungeard moncynnæs uard</**l**>  <**l**>eci dryctin æfter tiadæ</**l**>  <**l**>firum foldu frea allmectig</**l**>  <**trailer**>primo cantauit Cædmon istud carmen.</**trailer**> </**body**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.global"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divTop"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.global"/>     <classRef key="model.divTop"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.global"/>     <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>   <alternate>    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="1">     <classRef key="model.divLike"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <classRef key="model.global"/>      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="1">     <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <classRef key="model.global"/>      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>    <sequence>     <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="1">      <classRef key="model.common"/>      <classRef key="model.global"       maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>     </sequence>     <alternate minOccurs="0">      <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"       minOccurs="1">       <classRef key="model.divLike"/>       <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"        minOccurs="0">        <classRef key="model.global"/>        <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>       </alternate>      </sequence>      <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"       minOccurs="1">       <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>       <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"        minOccurs="0">        <classRef key="model.global"/>        <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>       </alternate>      </sequence>     </alternate>    </sequence>   </alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element body {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declaring),  (  [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\*,  ( [tei\_model.divTop](#TEI.tei_model.divTop), ( [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) | [tei\_model.divTop](#TEI.tei_model.divTop) )\* )?,  ( [tei\_model.divGenLike](#TEI.tei_model.divGenLike), ( [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) | [tei\_model.divGenLike](#TEI.tei_model.divGenLike) )\* )?,  (  ( [tei\_model.divLike](#TEI.tei_model.divLike), ( [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) | [tei\_model.divGenLike](#TEI.tei_model.divGenLike) )\* )+  | ( [tei\_model.div1Like](#TEI.tei_model.div1Like), ( [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) | [tei\_model.divGenLike](#TEI.tei_model.divGenLike) )\* )+  | (  ( [tei\_model.common](#TEI.tei_model.common), [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\* )+,  (  (  [tei\_model.divLike](#TEI.tei_model.divLike),  ( [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) | [tei\_model.divGenLike](#TEI.tei_model.divGenLike) )\*  )+  | (  [tei\_model.div1Like](#TEI.tei_model.div1Like),  ( [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) | [tei\_model.divGenLike](#TEI.tei_model.divGenLike) )\*  )+  )?  )  ),  ( [tei\_model.divBottom](#TEI.tei_model.divBottom), [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\* )\*  ) } |

## <byline>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<byline>** contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work. [[4.2.2. Openers and Closers](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSOC) [4.5. Front Matter](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSFRONT)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **textstructure:** back body div front group opener titlePage |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **textstructure:** docAuthor  character data |
| **Note** | The byline on a title page may include either the name or a description for the document's author. Where the name is included, it may optionally be tagged using the <docAuthor> element. |
| **Example** | <**byline**>Written by a CITIZEN who continued all the  while in London. Never made publick before.</**byline**> |
| **Example** | <**byline**>Written from her own MEMORANDUMS</**byline**> |
| **Example** | <**byline**>By George Jones, Political Editor, in Washington</**byline**> |
| **Example** | <**byline**>BY <**docAuthor**>THOMAS PHILIPOTT,</**docAuthor**>  Master of Arts,  (Somtimes)  Of Clare-Hall in Cambridge.</**byline**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <elementRef key="docAuthor"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element byline {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  (  text  | [tei\_model.gLike](#TEI.tei_model.gLike) | [tei\_model.phrase](#TEI.tei_model.phrase) | [tei\_docAuthor](#TEI.tei_docAuthor) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\* } |

## <c>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<c>** (character) represents a character. [[17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILC)] | |
| **Module** | analysis |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.segLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl m pc phr s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **header:** change distributor edition extent geoDecl licence  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **gaiji:** g  character data |
| **Note** | Contains a single character, a <g> element, or a sequence of graphemes to be treated as a single character. The *@type* attribute is used to indicate the function of this segmentation, taking values such as letter, punctuation, or digit etc. |
| **Example** | <**phr**>  <**c**>M</**c**>  <**c**>O</**c**>  <**c**>A</**c**>  <**c**>I</**c**>  <**w**>doth</**w**>  <**w**>sway</**w**>  <**w**>my</**w**>  <**w**>life</**w**> </**phr**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element c {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.segLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.segLike),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_macro.xtext](#TEI.tei_macro.xtext)} |

## <cRefPattern>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<cRefPattern>** (canonical reference pattern) specifies an expression and replacement pattern for transforming a canonical reference into a URI. [[2.3.6.3. Milestone Method](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD54M) [2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD54) [2.3.6.2. Search-and-Replace Method](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD54S)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.patternReplacement (@matchPattern, @replacementPattern) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** refsDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab |
| **Note** | The result of the substitution may be either an absolute or a relative URI reference. In the latter case it is combined with the value of *@xml:base* in force at the place where the *@cRef* attribute occurs to form an absolute URI in the usual manner as prescribed by [XML Base](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlbase/). |
| **Example** | <**cRefPattern** **matchPattern**="([1-9A-Za-z]+)\s+([0-9]+):([0-9]+)"  **replacementPattern**="#xpath(//div[@type='book'][@n='$1']/div[@type='chap'][@n='$2']/div[@type='verse'][@n='$3'])"/> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.pLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element cRefPattern {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.patternReplacement.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.patternReplacement),  [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)\* } |

## <calendar>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<calendar>** describes a calendar or dating system used in a dating formula in the text. [[2.4.5. Calendar Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD44)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** calendarDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab |
| **Example** | <**calendarDesc**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="julianEngland">   <**p**>Julian Calendar (including proleptic)</**p**>  </**calendar**> </**calendarDesc**> |
| **Example** | <**calendarDesc**>  <**calendar** **target**="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Egyptian\_calendar"   **xml:id**="egyptian">   <**p**>Egyptian calendar (as defined by Wikipedia)</**p**>  </**calendar**> </**calendarDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.pLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element calendar {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.pointing),  [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+ } |

## <calendarDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<calendarDesc>** (calendar description) contains a description of the calendar system used in any dating expression found in the text. [[2.4. The Profile Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4) [2.4.5. Calendar Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD44)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.profileDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** profileDesc |
| **May contain** | **header:** calendar |
| **Note** | In the first example above, calendars and short codes for *@xml:id*s are from W3 guidelines at http://www.w3.org/TR/xpath-functions-11/#lang-cal-country |
| **Example** | <**calendarDesc**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_AD">   <**p**>Anno Domini (Christian Era)</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_AH">   <**p**>Anno Hegirae (Muhammedan Era)</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_AME">   <**p**>Mauludi Era (solar years since Mohammed's birth)</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_AM">   <**p**>Anno Mundi (Jewish Calendar)</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_AP">   <**p**>Anno Persici</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_AS">   <**p**>Aji Saka Era (Java)</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_BE">   <**p**>Buddhist Era</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_CB">   <**p**>Cooch Behar Era</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_CE">   <**p**>Common Era</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_CL">   <**p**>Chinese Lunar Era</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_CS">   <**p**>Chula Sakarat Era</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_EE">   <**p**>Ethiopian Era</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_FE">   <**p**>Fasli Era</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_ISO">   <**p**>ISO 8601 calendar</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_JE">   <**p**>Japanese Calendar</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_KE">   <**p**>Khalsa Era (Sikh calendar)</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_KY">   <**p**>Kali Yuga</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_ME">   <**p**>Malabar Era</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_MS">   <**p**>Monarchic Solar Era</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_NS">   <**p**>Nepal Samwat Era</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_OS">   <**p**>Old Style (Julian Calendar)</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_RS">   <**p**>Rattanakosin (Bangkok) Era</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_SE">   <**p**>Saka Era</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_SH">   <**p**>Mohammedan Solar Era (Iran)</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_SS">   <**p**>Saka Samvat</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_TE">   <**p**>Tripurabda Era</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_VE">   <**p**>Vikrama Era</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_VS">   <**p**>Vikrama Samvat Era</**p**>  </**calendar**> </**calendarDesc**> |
| **Example** | <**calendarDesc**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_Gregorian">   <**p**>Gregorian calendar</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_Julian">   <**p**>Julian calendar</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_Islamic">   <**p**>Islamic or Muslim (hijri) lunar calendar</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_Hebrew">   <**p**>Hebrew or Jewish lunisolar calendar</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_Revolutionary">   <**p**>French Revolutionary calendar</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_Iranian">   <**p**>Iranian or Persian (Jalaali) solar calendar</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_Coptic">   <**p**>Coptic or Alexandrian calendar</**p**>  </**calendar**>  <**calendar** **xml:id**="cal\_Chinese">   <**p**>Chinese lunisolar calendar</**p**>  </**calendar**> </**calendarDesc**> |
| **Example** | <**calendarDesc**>  <**calendar** **target**="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Egyptian\_calendar"   **xml:id**="cal\_Egyptian">   <**p**>Egyptian calendar (as defined by Wikipedia)</**p**>  </**calendar**> </**calendarDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <elementRef key="calendar"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element calendarDesc { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_calendar](#TEI.tei_calendar)+ } |

## <catDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<catDesc>** (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal <textDesc>. [[2.3.7. The Classification Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD55)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** category |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **corpus:** textDesc  **header:** idno  character data |
| **Example** | <**catDesc**>Prose reportage</**catDesc**> |
| **Example** | <**catDesc**>  <**textDesc** **n**="novel">   <**channel** **mode**="w">print; part issues</**channel**>   <**constitution** **type**="single"/>   <**derivation** **type**="original"/>   <**domain** **type**="art"/>   <**factuality** **type**="fiction"/>   <**interaction** **type**="none"/>   <**preparedness** **type**="prepared"/>   <**purpose** **degree**="high" **type**="entertain"/>   <**purpose** **degree**="medium" **type**="inform"/>  </**textDesc**> </**catDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>   <classRef key="model.catDescPart"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element catDesc {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  ( text | [tei\_model.limitedPhrase](#TEI.tei_model.limitedPhrase) | [tei\_model.catDescPart](#TEI.tei_model.catDescPart) )\* } |

## <catRef>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<catRef>** (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology. [[2.4.3. The Text Classification](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD43)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **scheme** | identifies the classification scheme within which the set of categories concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element, or by some other resource.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | |
| **Contained by** | **core:** imprint  **header:** textClass |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | The *@scheme* attribute needs to be supplied only if more than one taxonomy has been declared. |
| **Example** | <**catRef** **scheme**="#myTopics"  **target**="#news #prov #sales2"/> <!-- elsewhere --> <**taxonomy** **xml:id**="myTopics">  <**category** **xml:id**="news">   <**catDesc**>Newspapers</**catDesc**>  </**category**>  <**category** **xml:id**="prov">   <**catDesc**>Provincial</**catDesc**>  </**category**>  <**category** **xml:id**="sales2">   <**catDesc**>Low to average annual sales</**catDesc**>  </**category**> </**taxonomy**> |
| **Content model** | <content> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element catRef {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.pointing),  attribute scheme { text }?,  empty } |

## <category>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<category>** contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy. [[2.3.7. The Classification Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD55)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** category taxonomy |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc gloss  **header:** catDesc category |
| **Example** | <**category** **xml:id**="b1">  <**catDesc**>Prose reportage</**catDesc**> </**category**> |
| **Example** | <**category** **xml:id**="b2">  <**catDesc**>Prose </**catDesc**>  <**category** **xml:id**="b11">   <**catDesc**>journalism</**catDesc**>  </**category**>  <**category** **xml:id**="b12">   <**catDesc**>fiction</**catDesc**>  </**category**> </**category**> |
| **Example** | <**category** **xml:id**="LIT">  <**catDesc** **xml:lang**="pl">literatura piękna</**catDesc**>  <**catDesc** **xml:lang**="en">fiction</**catDesc**>  <**category** **xml:id**="LPROSE">   <**catDesc** **xml:lang**="pl">proza</**catDesc**>   <**catDesc** **xml:lang**="en">prose</**catDesc**>  </**category**>  <**category** **xml:id**="LPOETRY">   <**catDesc** **xml:lang**="pl">poezja</**catDesc**>   <**catDesc** **xml:lang**="en">poetry</**catDesc**>  </**category**>  <**category** **xml:id**="LDRAMA">   <**catDesc** **xml:lang**="pl">dramat</**catDesc**>   <**catDesc** **xml:lang**="en">drama</**catDesc**>  </**category**> </**category**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate>    <elementRef key="catDesc"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.descLike"/>     <classRef key="model.glossLike"/>    </alternate>   </alternate>   <elementRef key="category"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element category {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  (  ( [tei\_catDesc](#TEI.tei_catDesc)+ | ( [tei\_model.descLike](#TEI.tei_model.descLike) | [tei\_model.glossLike](#TEI.tei_model.glossLike) )\* ),  [tei\_category](#TEI.tei_category)\*  ) } |

## <cb>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<cb>** (column beginning) marks the beginning of a new column of a text on a multi-column page. [[3.10.3. Milestone Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break) |
| **Member of** | model.milestoneLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl m phr s span w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | On this element, the global *@n* attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the column which follows the point of insertion of this <cb> element. Encoders should adopt a clear and consistent policy as to whether the numbers associated with column breaks relate to the physical sequence number of the column in the whole text, or whether columns are numbered within the page. The <cb> element is placed at the head of the column to which it refers. |
| **Example** | Markup of an early English dictionary printed in two columns:  <**pb**/> <**cb** **n**="1"/> <**entryFree**>  <**form**>Well</**form**>, <**sense**>a Pit to hold Spring-Water</**sense**>: <**sense**>In the Art of <**hi** **rend**="italic">War</**hi**>, a Depth the Miner    sinks into the Ground, to find out and disappoint the Enemies Mines,    or to prepare one</**sense**>. </**entryFree**> <**entryFree**>To <**form**>Welter</**form**>, <**sense**>to wallow</**sense**>, or <**sense**>lie groveling</**sense**>.</**entryFree**> <!-- remainder of column --> <**cb** **n**="2"/> <**entryFree**>  <**form**>Wey</**form**>, <**sense**>the greatest Measure for dry Things,    containing five Chaldron</**sense**>. </**entryFree**> <**entryFree**>  <**form**>Whale</**form**>, <**sense**>the greatest of    Sea-Fishes</**sense**>. </**entryFree**> |
| **Content model** | <content> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element cb {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.edition.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.edition),  [tei\_att.spanning.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.spanning),  [tei\_att.breaking.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.breaking),  empty } |

## <change>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<change>** documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file. [[2.6. The Revision Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6) [2.4.1. Creation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4C) [11.7. Identifying Changes and Revisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PH-changes)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.ascribed (@who) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.docStatus (@status) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **target** | points to one or more elements that belong to this change.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | |
| **Contained by** | **header:** listChange revisionDesc |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | The *@who* attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically specify a <respStmt> or <person> element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible for the change and their role in making it.  It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first. The *@status* attribute may be used to indicate the status of a document following the change documented. |
| **Example** | <**titleStmt**>  <**title**> ... </**title**>  <**editor** **xml:id**="LDB">Lou Burnard</**editor**>  <**respStmt** **xml:id**="BZ">   <**resp**>copy editing</**resp**>   <**name**>Brett Zamir</**name**>  </**respStmt**> </**titleStmt**> <!-- ... --> <**revisionDesc** **status**="published">  <**change** **status**="public" **when**="2008-02-02"   **who**="#BZ">Finished chapter 23</**change**>  <**change** **status**="draft" **when**="2008-01-02"   **who**="#BZ">Finished chapter 2</**change**>  <**change** **n**="P2.2" **when**="1991-12-21"   **who**="#LDB">Added examples to section 3</**change**>  <**change** **when**="1991-11-11" **who**="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</**change**> </**revisionDesc**> |
| **Example** | <**profileDesc**>  <**creation**>   <**listChange**>    <**change** **xml:id**="DRAFT1">First draft in pencil</**change**>    <**change** **notBefore**="1880-12-09"     **xml:id**="DRAFT2">First revision, mostly        using green ink</**change**>    <**change** **notBefore**="1881-02-13"     **xml:id**="DRAFT3">Final corrections as        supplied to printer.</**change**>   </**listChange**>  </**creation**> </**profileDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element change {  [tei\_att.ascribed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.ascribed),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.docStatus.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.docStatus),  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute target { list { + } }?,  [tei\_macro.specialPara](#TEI.tei_macro.specialPara)} |

## <channel>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<channel>** (primary channel) describes the medium or channel by which a text is delivered or experienced. For a written text, this might be print, manuscript, email, etc.; for a spoken one, radio, telephone, face-to-face, etc. [[15.2.1. The Text Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHTD)] | |
| **Module** | corpus |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **mode** | specifies the mode of this channel with respect to speech and writing.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **s** (spoken)  **w** (written)  **sw** (spoken to be written) e.g. dictation  **ws** (written to be spoken) e.g. a script  **m** (mixed)  **x** (unknown or inapplicable) [Default] | | |
| **Member of** | model.textDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **corpus:** textDesc |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**channel** **mode**="s">face-to-face conversation</**channel**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element channel {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute mode { "s" | "w" | "sw" | "ws" | "m" | "x" }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

## <char>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<char>** (character) provides descriptive information about a character. [[5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/WD.html#D25-20)] | |
| **Module** | gaiji |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **gaiji:** charDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** binaryObject desc graphic media note  **gaiji:** charName charProp mapping |
| **Example** | <**char** **xml:id**="circledU4EBA">  <**charName**>CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA</**charName**>  <**charProp**>   <**unicodeName**>character-decomposition-mapping</**unicodeName**>   <**value**>circle</**value**>  </**charProp**>  <**charProp**>   <**localName**>daikanwa</**localName**>   <**value**>36</**value**>  </**charProp**>  <**mapping** **type**="standard">人</**mapping**> </**char**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="charName" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.descLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="charProp"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="mapping"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="figure"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.graphicLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.noteLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element char {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  (  [tei\_charName](#TEI.tei_charName)?,  [tei\_model.descLike](#TEI.tei_model.descLike)\*,  [tei\_charProp](#TEI.tei_charProp)\*,  [tei\_mapping](#TEI.tei_mapping)\*,  [figure](#TEI.figure)\*,  [tei\_model.graphicLike](#TEI.tei_model.graphicLike)\*,  [tei\_model.noteLike](#TEI.tei_model.noteLike)\*  ) } |

## <charDecl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<charDecl>** (character declarations) provides information about nonstandard characters and glyphs. [[5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/WD.html#D25-20)] | |
| **Module** | gaiji |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc  **gaiji:** char glyph |
| **Example** | <**charDecl**>  <**char** **xml:id**="aENL">   <**charName**>LATIN LETTER ENLARGED SMALL A</**charName**>   <**mapping** **type**="standard">a</**mapping**>  </**char**> </**charDecl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <elementRef key="char"/>    <elementRef key="glyph"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element charDecl {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  ( [tei\_desc](#TEI.tei_desc)?, ( [tei\_char](#TEI.tei_char) | [tei\_glyph](#TEI.tei_glyph) )+ ) } |

## <charName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<charName>** (character name) contains the name of a character, expressed following Unicode conventions. [[5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/WD.html#D25-20)] | |
| **Module** | gaiji |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **gaiji:** char |
| **May contain** | Character data only |
| **Note** | The name must follow Unicode conventions for character naming. Projects working in similar fields are recommended to coordinate and publish their list of <charName>s to facilitate data exchange. |
| **Example** | <**charName**>CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA</**charName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element charName { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), text } |

## <charProp>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<charProp>** (character property) provides a name and value for some property of the parent character or glyph. [[5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/WD.html#D25-20)] | |
| **Module** | gaiji |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Contained by** | **gaiji:** char glyph |
| **May contain** | **gaiji:** localName unicodeName value |
| **Note** | If the property is a Unicode Normative Property, then its <unicodeName> must be supplied. Otherwise, its name must be specied by means of a <localName>.  At a later release, additional constraints will be defined on possible value/name combinations using Schematron rules |
| **Example** | <**charProp**>  <**unicodeName**>character-decomposition-mapping</**unicodeName**>  <**value**>circle</**value**> </**charProp**> <**charProp**>  <**localName**>daikanwa</**localName**>  <**value**>36</**value**> </**charProp**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate>    <elementRef key="unicodeName"/>    <elementRef key="localName"/>   </alternate>   <elementRef key="value"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element charProp {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  ( ( [tei\_unicodeName](#TEI.tei_unicodeName) | [tei\_localName](#TEI.tei_localName) ), [tei\_value](#TEI.tei_value) ) } |

## <choice>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<choice>** groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text. [[3.4. Simple Editorial Changes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.editorial |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl pc phr s span w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr choice corr expan orig reg sic unclear  **linking:** seg |
| **Note** | Because the children of a <choice> element all represent alternative ways of encoding the same sequence, it is natural to think of them as mutually exclusive. However, there may be cases where a full representation of a text requires the alternative encodings to be considered as parallel.  Note also that <choice> elements may self-nest.  Where the purpose of an encoding is to record multiple witnesses of a single work, rather than to identify multiple possible encoding decisions at a given point, the <app> element and associated elements discussed in section [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TC.html#TCAPLL) should be preferred. |
| **Example** | An American encoding of *Gulliver's Travels* which retains the British spelling but also provides a version regularized to American spelling might be encoded as follows.  <**p**>Lastly, That, upon his solemn oath to observe all the above  articles, the said man-mountain shall have a daily allowance of  meat and drink sufficient for the support of <**choice**>   <**sic**>1724</**sic**>   <**corr**>1728</**corr**>  </**choice**> of our subjects,  with free access to our royal person, and other marks of our <**choice**>   <**orig**>favour</**orig**>   <**reg**>favor</**reg**>  </**choice**>.</**p**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <classRef key="model.choicePart"/>   <elementRef key="choice"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element choice {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  ( [tei\_model.choicePart](#TEI.tei_model.choicePart) | [tei\_choice](#TEI.tei_choice) )\* } |

## <cit>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<cit>** (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example. [[3.3.3. Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ) [4.3.1. Grouped Texts](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSGRP) [9.3.5.1. Examples](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DI.html#DITPEG)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.quoteLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear  **header:** change licence rendition tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** body div docEdition imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** bibl biblStruct cb cit gap index lb listBibl milestone note pb ptr q quote ref said  **header:** biblFull  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline |
| **Example** | <**cit**>  <**quote**>and the breath of the whale is frequently attended with such an insupportable smell,    as to bring on disorder of the brain.</**quote**>  <**bibl**>Ulloa's South America</**bibl**> </**cit**> |
| **Example** | <**entry**>  <**form**>   <**orth**>horrifier</**orth**>  </**form**>  <**cit** **type**="translation" **xml:lang**="en">   <**quote**>to horrify</**quote**>  </**cit**>  <**cit** **type**="example">   <**quote**>elle était horrifiée par la dépense</**quote**>   <**cit** **type**="translation" **xml:lang**="en">    <**quote**>she was horrified at the expense.</**quote**>   </**cit**>  </**cit**> </**entry**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="1">   <classRef key="model.qLike"/>   <classRef key="model.egLike"/>   <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>   <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>   <classRef key="model.entryPart"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element cit {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  (  [tei\_model.qLike](#TEI.tei_model.qLike) | [tei\_model.egLike](#TEI.tei_model.egLike) | [tei\_model.biblLike](#TEI.tei_model.biblLike) | [tei\_model.ptrLike](#TEI.tei_model.ptrLike) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) | [tei\_model.entryPart](#TEI.tei_model.entryPart) )+ } |

## <citedRange>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<citedRange>** (cited range) defines the range of cited content, often represented by pages or other units [[3.11.2.5. Scopes and Ranges in Bibliographic Citations](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOB)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.citing (@unit, @from, @to) |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl biblStruct |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | When a single page is being cited, use the *@from* and *@to* attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is provided, the *@from* attribute may be used without *@to*; for example a citation such as ‘p. 3ff’ might be encoded <biblScope from="3">p. 3ff<biblScope>. |
| **Example** | <**citedRange**>pp 12–13</**citedRange**> <**citedRange** **from**="12" **to**="13" **unit**="page"/> <**citedRange** **unit**="volume">II</**citedRange**> <**citedRange** **unit**="page">12</**citedRange**> |
| **Example** | <**bibl**>  <**ptr** **target**="#mueller01"/>, <**citedRange** **target**="http://example.com/mueller3.xml#page4">vol. 3, pp.    4-5</**citedRange**> </**bibl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element citedRange {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.pointing),  [tei\_att.citing.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.citing),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <cl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<cl>** (clause) represents a grammatical clause. [[17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILC)] | |
| **Module** | analysis |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.segLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **header:** change distributor edition extent geoDecl licence  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | The *@type* attribute may be used to indicate the type of clause, taking values such as finite, nonfinite, declarative, interrogative, relative etc. as appropriate. |
| **Example** | <**cl** **function**="clause\_modifier"  **type**="relative">Which frightened  both the heroes so,<**cl**>They quite forgot their quarrel.</**cl**> </**cl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element cl {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.segLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.segLike),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <classCode>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<classCode>** (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system. [[2.4.3. The Text Classification](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD43)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **scheme** | identifies the classification system in use, as defined by, e.g. a <taxonomy> element, or some other resource.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | |
| **Contained by** | **core:** imprint  **header:** textClass |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**classCode** **scheme**="http://www.udc.org">410</**classCode**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element classCode {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute scheme { text },  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

## <classDecl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<classDecl>** (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text. [[2.3.7. The Classification Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD55) [2.3. The Encoding Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **header:** taxonomy |
| **Example** | <**classDecl**>  <**taxonomy** **xml:id**="LCSH">   <**bibl**>Library of Congress Subject Headings</**bibl**>  </**taxonomy**> </**classDecl**> <!-- ... --> <**textClass**>  <**keywords** **scheme**="#LCSH">   <**term**>Political science</**term**>   <**term**>United States -- Politics and government —      Revolution, 1775-1783</**term**>  </**keywords**> </**textClass**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <elementRef key="taxonomy"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element classDecl { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_taxonomy](#TEI.tei_taxonomy)+ } |

## <closer>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<closer>** groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter. [[4.2.2. Openers and Closers](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSOC) [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.divBottomPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **textstructure:** back body div front group postscript |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **textstructure:** dateline salute signed  character data |
| **Example** | <**div** **type**="letter">  <**p**> perhaps you will favour me with a sight of it when convenient.</**p**>  <**closer**>   <**salute**>I remain, &amp;c. &amp;c.</**salute**>   <**signed**>H. Colburn</**signed**>  </**closer**> </**div**> |
| **Example** | <**div** **type**="chapter">  <**p**> <!-- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will Yes.</**p**>  <**closer**>   <**dateline**>    <**name** **type**="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</**name**>    <**date**>1914–1921</**date**>   </**dateline**>  </**closer**> </**div**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <elementRef key="signed"/>   <elementRef key="dateline"/>   <elementRef key="salute"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element closer {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.written.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.written),  (  text  | [tei\_model.gLike](#TEI.tei_model.gLike) | [tei\_signed](#TEI.tei_signed) | [tei\_dateline](#TEI.tei_dateline) | [tei\_salute](#TEI.tei_salute) | [tei\_model.phrase](#TEI.tei_model.phrase) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\* } |

## <constitution>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<constitution>** describes the internal composition of a text or text sample, for example as fragmentary, complete, etc. [[15.2.1. The Text Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHTD)] | |
| **Module** | corpus |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | specifies how the text was constituted.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **single** a single complete text [Default]  **composite** a text made by combining several smaller items, each individually complete  **frags** (fragments) a text made by combining several smaller, not necessarily complete, items  **unknown** composition unknown or unspecified | | |
| **Member of** | model.textDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **corpus:** textDesc |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  character data |
| **Note** | The function of this element seems to overlap with both the *@org* attribute on <div> and the <samplingDecl> in the <encodingDesc>. |
| **Example** | <**constitution** **type**="frags">Prologues only.</**constitution**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element constitution {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute type { "single" | "composite" | "frags" | "unknown" }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

## <corr>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<corr>** (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text. [[3.4.1. Apparent Errors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDCOR)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl pc phr s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **header:** change distributor edition extent geoDecl licence  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been corrected, <corr> may be used alone:  I don't know,  Juan. It's so far in the past now — how <**corr**>can we</**corr**> prove  or disprove anyone's theories? |
| **Example** | It is also possible, using the <choice> and <sic> elements, to provide an uncorrected reading:  I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now —  how <**choice**>  <**sic**>we can</**sic**>  <**corr**>can we</**corr**> </**choice**> prove or  disprove anyone's theories? |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element corr {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_macro.paraContent](#TEI.tei_macro.paraContent)} |

## <correction>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<correction>** (correction principles) states how and under what circumstances corrections have been made in the text. [[2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD53) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **status** | indicates the degree of correction applied to the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **high** the text has been thoroughly checked and proofread.  **medium** the text has been checked at least once.  **low** the text has not been checked.  **unknown** the correction status of the text is unknown. [Default] [Deprecated](http://www.tei-c.org/Activities/Council/Working/tcw27.xml). The value will no longer be a default after 2017-09-05. | | | **method** | indicates the method adopted to indicate corrections within the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **silent** corrections have been made silently [Default]  **markup** corrections have been represented using markup | | |
| **Member of** | model.editorialDeclPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** editorialDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab |
| **Note** | May be used to note the results of proof reading the text against its original, indicating (for example) whether discrepancies have been silently rectified, or recorded using the editorial tags described in section [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED). |
| **Example** | <**correction**>  <**p**>Errors in transcription controlled by using the WordPerfect spelling checker, with a user    defined dictionary of 500 extra words taken from Chambers Twentieth Century    Dictionary.</**p**> </**correction**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.pLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element correction {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  attribute status { "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown" }?,  attribute method { "silent" | "markup" }?,  [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+ } |

## <correspAction>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<correspAction>** (correspondence action) contains a structured description of the place, the name of a person/organization and the date related to the sending/receiving of a message or any other action related to the correspondence. [[2.4.6. Correspondence Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD44CD)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | describes the nature of the action.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Suggested values include:** | **sent** information concerning the sending or dispatch of a message.  **received** information concerning the receipt of a message.  **transmitted** information concerning the transmission of a message, i.e. between the dispatch and the next receipt, redirect or forwarding.  **redirected** information concerning the redirection of an unread message.  **forwarded** information concerning the forwarding of a message. | | |
| **Member of** | model.correspDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** correspDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date email name note p rs time  **header:** idno  **linking:** ab |
| **Example** | <**correspAction** **type**="sent">  <**persName**>Adelbert von Chamisso</**persName**>  <**settlement**>Vertus</**settlement**>  <**date** **when**="1807-01-29"/> </**correspAction**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.correspActionPart"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element correspAction {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  attribute type  {  "sent" | "received" | "transmitted" | "redirected" | "forwarded"  }?,  ( [tei\_model.correspActionPart](#TEI.tei_model.correspActionPart)+ | [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+ ) } |

## <correspContext>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<correspContext>** (correspondence context) provides references to preceding or following correspondence related to this piece of correspondence. [[2.4.6. Correspondence Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD44CD)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.correspDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** correspDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** note p ptr ref  **linking:** ab |
| **Example** | <**correspContext**>  <**ptr** **subtype**="toAuthor"   **target**="http://tei.ibi.hu-berlin.de/berliner-intellektuelle/manuscript?Brief101VarnhagenanBoeckh" **type**="next"/>  <**ptr** **subtype**="fromAuthor"   **target**="http://tei.ibi.hu-berlin.de/berliner-intellektuelle/manuscript?Brief103BoeckhanVarnhagen" **type**="prev"/> </**correspContext**> |
| **Example** | <**correspContext**>  <**ref** **target**="http://weber-gesamtausgabe.de/A040962"   **type**="prev"> Previous letter of  <**persName**>Carl Maria von Weber</**persName**> to  <**persName**>Caroline Brandt</**persName**>:  <**date** **when**="1816-12-30">December 30, 1816</**date**>  </**ref**>  <**ref** **target**="http://weber-gesamtausgabe.de/A041003"   **type**="next"> Next letter of  <**persName**>Carl Maria von Weber</**persName**> to  <**persName**>Caroline Brandt</**persName**>:  <**date** **when**="1817-01-05">January 5, 1817</**date**>  </**ref**> </**correspContext**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.correspContextPart"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element correspContext {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_model.correspContextPart](#TEI.tei_model.correspContextPart)+ } |

## <correspDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<correspDesc>** (correspondence description) contains a description of the actions related to one act of correspondence. [[2.4.6. Correspondence Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD44CD)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declarable (@default) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.profileDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** profileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** note p  **header:** correspAction correspContext  **linking:** ab |
| **Example** | <**correspDesc**>  <**correspAction** **type**="sent">   <**persName**>Carl Maria von Weber</**persName**>   <**settlement**>Dresden</**settlement**>   <**date** **when**="1817-06-23">23 June 1817</**date**>  </**correspAction**>  <**correspAction** **type**="received">   <**persName**>Caroline Brandt</**persName**>   <**settlement**>Prag</**settlement**>  </**correspAction**>  <**correspContext**>   <**ref** **target**="http://www.weber-gesamtausgabe.de/A041209"    **type**="prev">Previous letter of   <**persName**>Carl Maria von Weber</**persName**>       to <**persName**>Caroline Brandt</**persName**>:   <**date** **from**="1817-06-19" **to**="1817-06-20">June 19/20, 1817</**date**>   </**ref**>   <**ref** **target**="http://www.weber-gesamtausgabe.de/A041217"    **type**="next">Next letter of   <**persName**>Carl Maria von Weber</**persName**> to   <**persName**>Caroline Brandt</**persName**>:   <**date** **when**="1817-06-27">June 27, 1817</**date**>   </**ref**>  </**correspContext**> </**correspDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.correspDescPart"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element correspDesc {  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  [tei\_att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.canonical),  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  ( [tei\_model.correspDescPart](#TEI.tei_model.correspDescPart)+ | [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+ ) } |

## <creation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<creation>** contains information about the creation of a text. [[2.4.1. Creation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4C) [2.4. The Profile Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) |
| **Member of** | model.profileDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** profileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **header:** idno listChange  character data |
| **Note** | The <creation> element may be used to record details of a text's creation, e.g. the date and place it was composed, if these are of interest.  It may also contain a more structured account of the various stages or revisions associated with the evolution of a text; this should be encoded using the <listChange> element. It should not be confused with the <publicationStmt> element, which records date and place of publication. |
| **Example** | <**creation**>  <**date**>Before 1987</**date**> </**creation**> |
| **Example** | <**creation**>  <**date** **when**="1988-07-10">10 July 1988</**date**> </**creation**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>   <elementRef key="listChange"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element creation {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  ( text | [tei\_model.limitedPhrase](#TEI.tei_model.limitedPhrase) | [tei\_listChange](#TEI.tei_listChange) )\* } |

## <date>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<date>** contains a date in any format. [[3.5.4. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24) [2.6. The Revision Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6) [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI) [15.2.3. The Setting Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHSE) [13.3.6. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.dateLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s span  **core:** abbr add addrLine analytic author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose setting  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal publicationStmt rendition sponsor tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**date** **when**="1980-02">early February 1980</**date**> |
| **Example** | Given on the <**date** **when**="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day  of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic  the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</**date**> |
| **Example** | <**date** **when**="1990-09">September 1990</**date**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element date {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  ( text | [tei\_model.gLike](#TEI.tei_model.gLike) | [tei\_model.phrase](#TEI.tei_model.phrase) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\* } |

## <dateline>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<dateline>** contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer. [[4.2.2. Openers and Closers](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSOC)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.divWrapper |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **textstructure:** body closer div front group opener |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **textstructure:** docDate  character data |
| **Example** | <**dateline**>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</**dateline**> |
| **Example** | <**div** **type**="chapter">  <**p**> <!-- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will Yes.</**p**>  <**closer**>   <**dateline**>    <**name** **type**="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</**name**>    <**date**>1914–1921</**date**>   </**dateline**>  </**closer**> </**div**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>   <elementRef key="docDate"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element dateline {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  (  text  | [tei\_model.gLike](#TEI.tei_model.gLike) | [tei\_model.phrase](#TEI.tei_model.phrase) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) | [tei\_docDate](#TEI.tei_docDate) )\* } |

## <default>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<default>** (default feature value) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which contains a defaulted value. [[18.9. Default Values](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FSBO)] | |
| **Module** | iso-fs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.featureVal.single |
| **Contained by** | **iso-fs:** f fvLib vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vRange |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Example** | <**f** **name**="gender">  <**default**/> </**f**> |
| **Content model** | <content> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element default { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), empty } |

## <del>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<del>** (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [[3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDADD)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.transcriptional (@status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) ) (att.written (@hand)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl pc phr s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **header:** change distributor edition extent geoDecl licence  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The <delSpan> element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions.  The text deleted must be at least partially legible in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it (unless it is restored in a <supplied> tag). Illegible or lost text within a deletion may be marked using the <gap> tag to signal that text is present but has not been transcribed, or is no longer visible. Attributes on the <gap> element may be used to indicate how much text is omitted, the reason for omitting it, etc. If text is not fully legible, the <unclear> element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence in a similar way.  Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read, or whether a deletion was intended may be indicated by use of the <certainty> element (see [21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CE.html#CE)).  There is a clear distinction in the TEI between <del> and <surplus> on the one hand and <gap> or <unclear> on the other. <del> indicates a deletion present in the source being transcribed, which states the author's or a later scribe's intent to cancel or remove text. <surplus> indicates material present in the source being transcribed which should have been so deleted, but which is not in fact. <gap> or <unclear>, by contrast, signal an editor's or encoder's decision to omit something or their inability to read the source text. See sections [11.3.1.7. Text Omitted from or Supplied in the Transcription](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHOM) and [11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHCOMB) for the relationship between these and other related elements used in detailed transcription. |
| **Example** | <**l**>  <**del** **rend**="overtyped">Mein</**del**> Frisch <**del** **rend**="overstrike" **type**="primary">schwebt</**del**>  weht der Wind </**l**> |
| **Example** | <**del** **rend**="overstrike">  <**gap** **quantity**="5" **reason**="illegible"   **unit**="character"/> </**del**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element del {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.transcriptional.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.transcriptional),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_macro.paraContent](#TEI.tei_macro.paraContent)} |

## <derivation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<derivation>** describes the nature and extent of originality of this text. [[15.2.1. The Text Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHTD)] | |
| **Module** | corpus |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | categorizes the derivation of the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Sample values include:** | **original** text is original  **revision** text is a revision of some other text  **translation** text is a translation of some other text  **abridgment** text is an abridged version of some other text  **plagiarism** text is plagiarized from some other text  **traditional** text has no obvious source but is one of a number derived from some common ancestor | | |
| **Member of** | model.textDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **corpus:** textDesc |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  character data |
| **Note** | For derivative texts, details of the ancestor may be included in the source description. |
| **Example** | <**derivation** **type**="original"/> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element derivation {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute type { text }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

## <desc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<desc>** (description) contains a brief description of the object documented by its parent element, typically a documentation element or an entity. [[22.4.1. Description of Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TDcrystalsCEdc)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.translatable (@versionDate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.descLike model.labelLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del desc emph gap graphic head hi item l lg media meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic stage title unclear  **gaiji:** char charDecl glyph  **header:** application category change licence rendition schemaRef tagUsage taxonomy  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab join seg  **textstructure:** body div docEdition imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title  **header:** biblFull idno  character data |
| **Note** | When used in a specification element such as <elementSpec>, TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, begining with an active verb. |
| **Example** | <**desc**>contains a brief description of the purpose and intended use of a documentation element, or a brief characterisation of a parent entity </**desc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element desc {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.translatable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.translatable),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_macro.limitedContent](#TEI.tei_macro.limitedContent)} |

## <distinct>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<distinct>** identifies any word or phrase which is regarded as linguistically distinct, for example as archaic, technical, dialectal, non-preferred, etc., or as forming part of a sublanguage. [[3.3.2.3. Other Linguistically Distinct Material](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQHD)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | specifies the sublanguage or register to which the word or phrase is being assigned   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | | **time** | specifies how the phrase is distinct diachronically   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.text](#teidata.text) | | | **space** | specifies how the phrase is distinct diatopically   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.text](#teidata.text) | | | **social** | specifies how the phrase is distinct diastratically   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.text](#teidata.text) | | |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s span  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | Next morning a boy  in that dormitory confided to his bosom friend, a <**distinct** **type**="ps\_slang">fag</**distinct**> of  Macrea's, that there was trouble in their midst which King <**distinct** **type**="archaic">would fain</**distinct**>   keep secret. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element distinct {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute type { text }?,  attribute time { text }?,  attribute space { text }?,  attribute social { text }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <distributor>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<distributor>** supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl imprint  **header:** publicationStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**distributor**>Oxford Text Archive</**distributor**> <**distributor**>Redwood and Burn Ltd</**distributor**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element distributor { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq) } |

## <div>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<div>** (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [[4.1. Divisions of the Body](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDIV)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.divLike |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** back body div front |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** bibl biblStruct cb cit desc divGen gap head index l label lb lg list listBibl meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage  **header:** biblFull  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate opener postscript salute signed trailer |
| **Example** | <**body**>  <**div** **type**="part">   <**head**>Fallacies of Authority</**head**>   <**p**>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object, to repress all      exercise of the reasoning faculty.</**p**>   <**div** **n**="1" **type**="chapter">    <**head**>The Nature of Authority</**head**>    <**p**>With reference to any proposed measures having for their object the greatest        happiness of the greatest number [...]</**p**>    <**div** **n**="1.1" **type**="section">     <**head**>Analysis of Authority</**head**>     <**p**>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence to be attached to          authority [...] </**p**>    </**div**>    <**div** **n**="1.2" **type**="section">     <**head**>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</**head**>     <**p**>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when [...] </**p**>    </**div**>   </**div**>  </**div**> </**body**> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div. </s:report> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText)"> Abstract model violation: p and ab may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div. </s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divTop"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>   </alternate>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <alternate>     <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="1">      <alternate>       <classRef key="model.divLike"/>       <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>      </alternate>      <classRef key="model.global"       maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>     </sequence>     <sequence>      <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"       minOccurs="1">       <classRef key="model.common"/>       <classRef key="model.global"        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>      </sequence>      <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"       minOccurs="0">       <alternate>        <classRef key="model.divLike"/>        <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>       </alternate>       <classRef key="model.global"        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>      </sequence>     </sequence>    </alternate>    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>     <classRef key="model.global"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>    </sequence>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element div {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.divLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.divLike),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declaring),  [tei\_att.written.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.written),  (  ( [tei\_model.divTop](#TEI.tei_model.divTop) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\*,  (  (  ( ( [tei\_model.divLike](#TEI.tei_model.divLike) | [tei\_model.divGenLike](#TEI.tei_model.divGenLike) ), [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\* )+  | (  ( [tei\_model.common](#TEI.tei_model.common), [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\* )+,  (  ( [tei\_model.divLike](#TEI.tei_model.divLike) | [tei\_model.divGenLike](#TEI.tei_model.divGenLike) ),  [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\*  )\*  )  ),  ( [tei\_model.divBottom](#TEI.tei_model.divBottom), [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\* )\*  )?  ) } |

## <divGen>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<divGen>** (automatically generated text division) indicates the location at which a textual division generated automatically by a text-processing application is to appear. [[3.8.2. Index Entries](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONOIX)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | specifies what type of generated text division (e.g. index, table of contents, etc.) is to appear.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Sample values include:** | **index** an index is to be generated and inserted at this point.  **toc** a table of contents  **figlist** a list of figures  **tablist** a list of tables | | **Note** | Valid values are application-dependent; those shown are of obvious utility in document production, but are by no means exhaustive. | | |
| **Member of** | model.divGenLike model.frontPart |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** back body div front |
| **May contain** | **core:** head |
| **Note** | This element is intended primarily for use in document production or manipulation, rather than in the transcription of pre-existing materials; it makes it easier to specify the location of indices, tables of contents, etc., to be generated by text preparation or word processing software. |
| **Example** | One use for this element is to allow document preparation software to generate an index and insert it in the appropriate place in the output. The example below assumes that the *@indexName* attribute on <index> elements in the text has been used to specify index entries for the two generated indexes, named NAMES and THINGS:  <**back**>  <**div1** **type**="backmat">   <**head**>Bibliography</**head**> <!-- ... -->  </**div1**>  <**div1** **type**="backmat">   <**head**>Indices</**head**>   <**divGen** **n**="Index Nominum" **type**="NAMES"/>   <**divGen** **n**="Index Rerum" **type**="THINGS"/>  </**div1**> </**back**> |
| **Example** | Another use for <divGen> is to specify the location of an automatically produced table of contents:  <**front**> <!--<titlePage>...</titlePage>-->  <**divGen** **type**="toc"/>  <**div**>   <**head**>Preface</**head**>   <**p**> ... </**p**>  </**div**> </**front**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.headLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element divGen {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute type { text }?,  [tei\_model.headLike](#TEI.tei_model.headLike)\* } |

## <docAuthor>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<docAuthor>** (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline). [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **textstructure:** back body byline div front group titlePage |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | The document author's name often occurs within a byline, but the <docAuthor> element may be used whether the <byline> element is used or not. It should be used only for the author(s) of the entire document, not for author(s) of any subset or part of it. (Attributions of authorship of a subset or part of the document, for example of a chapter in a textbook or an article in a newspaper, may be encoded with <byline> without <docAuthor>.) |
| **Example** | <**titlePage**>  <**docTitle**>   <**titlePart**>Travels into Several Remote Nations of the World, in Four      Parts.</**titlePart**>  </**docTitle**>  <**byline**> By <**docAuthor**>Lemuel Gulliver</**docAuthor**>, First a Surgeon,    and then a Captain of several Ships</**byline**> </**titlePage**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element docAuthor {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.canonical),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <docDate>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<docDate>** (document date) contains the date of a document, as given on a title page or in a dateline. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **when** | gives the value of the date in standard form, i.e. YYYY-MM-DD.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.temporal.w3c](#teidata.temporal.w3c) | | **Note** | For simple dates, the *@when* attribute should give the Gregorian or proleptic Gregorian date in one of the formats specified in *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*. | | |
| **Member of** | model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **textstructure:** back body dateline div docImprint front group titlePage |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | Cf. the general <date> element in the core tag set. This specialized element is provided for convenience in marking and processing the date of the documents, since it is likely to require specialized handling for many applications. It should be used only for the date of the entire document, not for any subset or part of it. |
| **Example** | <**docImprint**>Oxford, Clarendon Press, <**docDate**>1987</**docDate**> </**docImprint**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element docDate {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute when { text }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <docEdition>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<docEdition>** (document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** back front titlePage |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | Cf. the <edition> element of bibliographic citation. As usual, the shorter name has been given to the more frequent element. |
| **Example** | <**docEdition**>The Third edition Corrected</**docEdition**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element docEdition { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_macro.paraContent](#TEI.tei_macro.paraContent) } |

## <docImprint>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<docImprint>** (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** back front titlePage |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr pubPlace publisher ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **textstructure:** docDate  character data |
| **Note** | Cf. the <imprint> element of bibliographic citations. As with title, author, and editions, the shorter name is reserved for the element likely to be used more often. |
| **Example** | <**docImprint**>Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1987</**docImprint**>  Imprints may be somewhat more complex:  <**docImprint**>  <**pubPlace**>London</**pubPlace**>  Printed for <**name**>E. Nutt</**name**>,  at <**pubPlace**>Royal Exchange</**pubPlace**>; <**name**>J. Roberts</**name**> in <**pubPlace**>wick-Lane</**pubPlace**>; <**name**>A. Dodd</**name**> without <**pubPlace**>Temple-Bar</**pubPlace**>;  and <**name**>J. Graves</**name**> in <**pubPlace**>St. James's-street.</**pubPlace**>  <**date**>1722.</**date**> </**docImprint**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <elementRef key="pubPlace"/>   <elementRef key="docDate"/>   <elementRef key="publisher"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element docImprint {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  (  text  | [tei\_model.gLike](#TEI.tei_model.gLike) | [tei\_model.phrase](#TEI.tei_model.phrase) | [tei\_pubPlace](#TEI.tei_pubPlace) | [tei\_docDate](#TEI.tei_docDate) | [tei\_publisher](#TEI.tei_publisher) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\* } |

## <docTitle>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<docTitle>** (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** back front titlePage |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** cb gap index lb milestone note pb  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  **textstructure:** titlePart |
| **Example** | <**docTitle**>  <**titlePart** **type**="main">The DUNCIAD, VARIOURVM.</**titlePart**>  <**titlePart** **type**="sub">WITH THE PROLEGOMENA of SCRIBLERUS.</**titlePart**> </**docTitle**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.global"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <elementRef key="titlePart"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element docTitle {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.canonical),  ( [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\*, ( [tei\_titlePart](#TEI.tei_titlePart), [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\* )+ ) } |

## <domain>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<domain>** (domain of use) describes the most important social context in which the text was realized or for which it is intended, for example private vs. public, education, religion, etc. [[15.2.1. The Text Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHTD)] | |
| **Module** | corpus |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | categorizes the domain of use.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Sample values include:** | **art** art and entertainment  **domestic** domestic and private  **religious** religious and ceremonial  **business** business and work place  **education** education  **govt** (government) government and law  **public** other forms of public context | | |
| **Member of** | model.textDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **corpus:** textDesc |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  character data |
| **Note** | Usually empty, unless some further clarification of the type attribute is needed, in which case it may contain running prose.  The list presented here is primarily for illustrative purposes. |
| **Example** | <**domain** **type**="domestic"/> <**domain** **type**="rel">religious broadcast</**domain**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element domain {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute type { text }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

## <edition>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<edition>** describes the particularities of one edition of a text. [[2.2.2. The Edition Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD22)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl monogr  **header:** editionStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**edition**>First edition <**date**>Oct 1990</**date**> </**edition**> <**edition** **n**="S2">Students' edition</**edition**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element edition { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq) } |

## <editionStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<editionStmt>** (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text. [[2.2.2. The Edition Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD22) [2.2. The File Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** biblFull fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** author editor meeting p respStmt  **header:** edition funder principal sponsor  **linking:** ab |
| **Example** | <**editionStmt**>  <**edition** **n**="S2">Students' edition</**edition**>  <**respStmt**>   <**resp**>Adapted by </**resp**>   <**name**>Elizabeth Kirk</**name**>  </**respStmt**> </**editionStmt**> |
| **Example** | <**editionStmt**>  <**p**>First edition, <**date**>Michaelmas Term, 1991.</**date**>  </**p**> </**editionStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <sequence>    <elementRef key="edition"/>    <classRef key="model.respLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element editionStmt {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  ( [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+ | ( [tei\_edition](#TEI.tei_edition), [tei\_model.respLike](#TEI.tei_model.respLike)\* ) ) } |

## <editor>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<editor>** contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [[3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** analytic bibl monogr series  **header:** editionStmt seriesStmt titleStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | A consistent format should be adopted.  Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names. |
| **Example** | <**editor** **role**="Technical\_Editor">Ron Van den Branden</**editor**> <**editor** **role**="Editor-in-Chief">John Walsh</**editor**> <**editor** **role**="Managing\_Editor">Anne Baillot</**editor**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element editor {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <editorialDecl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<editorialDecl>** (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text. [[2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD53) [2.3. The Encoding Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **header:** correction hyphenation interpretation normalization punctuation quotation segmentation stdVals  **linking:** ab |
| **Example** | <**editorialDecl**>  <**normalization**>   <**p**>All words converted to Modern American spelling using      Websters 9th Collegiate dictionary   </**p**>  </**normalization**>  <**quotation** **marks**="all">   <**p**>All opening quotation marks converted to “ all closing      quotation marks converted to &amp;cdq;.</**p**>  </**quotation**> </**editorialDecl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="1">   <classRef key="model.pLike"/>   <classRef key="model.editorialDeclPart"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element editorialDecl {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  ( [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike) | [tei\_model.editorialDeclPart](#TEI.tei_model.editorialDeclPart) )+ } |

## <email>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<email>** (electronic mail address) contains an email address identifying a location to which email messages can be delivered. [[3.5.2. Addresses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAD)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.addressLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s span  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | The format of a modern Internet email address is defined in [RFC 2822](https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc2822) |
| **Example** | <**email**>membership@tei-c.org</**email**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element email { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq) } |

## <emph>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<emph>** (emphasized) marks words or phrases which are stressed or emphasized for linguistic or rhetorical effect. [[3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and Phrases](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQHE) [3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQH)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s span  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | You took the car and did <**emph**>what</**emph**>?!! |
| **Example** | <**q**>What it all comes to is this,</**q**> he said.  <**q**>  <**emph**>What    does Christopher Robin do in the morning nowadays?</**emph**> </**q**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element emph { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_macro.paraContent](#TEI.tei_macro.paraContent) } |

## <encodingDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<encodingDesc>** (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. [[2.3. The Encoding Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5) [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.teiHeaderPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **gaiji:** charDecl  **header:** appInfo classDecl editorialDecl geoDecl listPrefixDef projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl schemaRef styleDefDecl tagsDecl  **iso-fs:** fsdDecl  **linking:** ab |
| **Example** | <**encodingDesc**>  <**p**>Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All    hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No    formatting or layout information preserved.</**p**> </**encodingDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="1">   <classRef key="model.encodingDescPart"/>   <classRef key="model.pLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element encodingDesc {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  ( [tei\_model.encodingDescPart](#TEI.tei_model.encodingDescPart) | [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike) )+ } |

## <expan>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<expan>** (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation. [[3.5.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAB)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) |
| **Member of** | model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl pc phr s span w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | The content of this element should be the expanded abbreviation, usually (but not always) a complete word or phrase. The <ex> element provided by the transcr module may be used to mark up sequences of letters supplied within such an expansion. |
| **Example** | The address is Southmoor <**choice**>  <**expan**>Road</**expan**>  <**abbr**>Rd</**abbr**> </**choice**> |
| **Example** | <**choice** **xml:lang**="la">  <**abbr**>Imp</**abbr**>  <**expan**>Imp<**ex**>erator</**ex**>  </**expan**> </**choice**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element expan {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <extent>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<extent>** describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units. [[2.2.3. Type and Extent of File](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD23) [2.2. The File Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2) [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI) [10.7.1. Object Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/MS.html#msph1)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl monogr  **header:** biblFull fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**extent**>3200 sentences</**extent**> <**extent**>between 10 and 20 Mb</**extent**> <**extent**>ten 3.5 inch high density diskettes</**extent**> |
| **Example** | The <measure> element may be used to supply normalised or machine tractable versions of the size or sizes concerned.  <**extent**>  <**measure** **quantity**="4.2" **unit**="MiB">About four megabytes</**measure**>  <**measure** **quantity**="245" **unit**="pages">245 pages of source    material</**measure**> </**extent**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element extent { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq) } |

## <f>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<f>** (feature) represents a feature value specification, that is, the association of a name with a value of any of several different types. [[18.2. Elementary Feature Structures and the Binary Feature Value](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FSBI)] | |
| **Module** | iso-fs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **name** | a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>), providing a name for the feature.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [teidata.name](#teidata.name) | | | **fVal** | (feature value) references any element which can be used to represent the value of a feature.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | **Note** | If this attribute is supplied as well as content, the value referenced is to be unified with that contained. | | |
| **Contained by** | **iso-fs:** fLib fs |
| **May contain** | **iso-fs:** binary default fs numeric string symbol vAlt vColl vLabel  character data |
| **Note** | The content of <f> may be textual, with the assumption that the data type of the feature value is determined by the schema—this is the approach used in many language-technology-oriented projects and recommendations. |
| **Example** | <**f** **name**="gender">  <**symbol** **value**="feminine"/> </**f**> |
| **Example** | <**fs**>  <**f** **name**="voice">active</**f**>  <**f** **name**="tense">SimPre</**f**> </**fs**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.featureVal"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element f {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datcat.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datcat),  attribute name { text },  attribute fVal { text }?,  ( text | [tei\_model.featureVal](#TEI.tei_model.featureVal) ) } |

## <fDecl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<fDecl>** (feature declaration) declares a single feature, specifying its name, organization, range of allowed values, and optionally its default value. [[18.11. Feature System Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FD)] | |
| **Module** | iso-fs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **name** | a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>), indicating the name of the feature being declared; matches the *@name* attribute of <f> elements in the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [teidata.name](#teidata.name) | | | **optional** | indicates whether or not the value of this feature may be present.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.truthValue](#teidata.truthValue) | | **Default** | true | | **Note** | If a feature is marked as optional, it is possible for it to be omitted from a feature structure. If an obligatory feature is omitted, then it is understood to have a default value, either explicitly declared, or, if no default is supplied, the special value any. If an optional feature is omitted, then it is understood to be missing and any possible value (including the default) is ignored. | | |
| **Contained by** | **iso-fs:** fsDecl |
| **May contain** | **iso-fs:** fDescr vDefault vRange |
| **Example** | <**fDecl** **name**="INV">  <**fDescr**>inverted sentence</**fDescr**>  <**vRange**>   <**vAlt**>    <**binary** **value**="true"/>    <**binary** **value**="false"/>   </**vAlt**>  </**vRange**>  <**vDefault**>   <**binary** **value**="false"/>  </**vDefault**> </**fDecl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="fDescr" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="vRange"/>   <elementRef key="vDefault" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element fDecl {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute name { text },  attribute optional { text }?,  ( [tei\_fDescr](#TEI.tei_fDescr)?, [tei\_vRange](#TEI.tei_vRange), [tei\_vDefault](#TEI.tei_vDefault)? ) } |

## <fDescr>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<fDescr>** (feature description (in FSD)) describes in prose what is represented by the feature being declared and its values. [[18.11. Feature System Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FD)] | |
| **Module** | iso-fs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **iso-fs:** fDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title  **header:** biblFull idno  character data |
| **Note** | May contain character data, phrase-level elements, and inter-level elements. |
| **Example** | <**fDecl** **name**="INV">  <**fDescr**>inverted sentence</**fDescr**>  <**vRange**>   <**vAlt**>    <**binary** **value**="true"/>    <**binary** **value**="false"/>   </**vAlt**>  </**vRange**>  <**vDefault**>   <**binary** **value**="false"/>  </**vDefault**> </**fDecl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element fDescr { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_macro.limitedContent](#TEI.tei_macro.limitedContent) } |

## <fLib>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<fLib>** (feature library) assembles a library of <f> (feature) elements. [[18.4. Feature Libraries and Feature-Value Libraries](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FSFL)] | |
| **Module** | iso-fs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl m phr s span w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **iso-fs:** f |
| **Note** | The global *@n* attribute may be used to supply an informal name to categorize the library's contents. |
| **Example** | <**fLib** **n**="agreement features">  <**f** **name**="person" **xml:id**="pers1">   <**symbol** **value**="first"/>  </**f**>  <**f** **name**="person" **xml:id**="pers2">   <**symbol** **value**="second"/>  </**f**> <!-- ... -->  <**f** **name**="number" **xml:id**="nums">   <**symbol** **value**="singular"/>  </**f**>  <**f** **name**="number" **xml:id**="nump">   <**symbol** **value**="plural"/>  </**f**> <!-- ... --> </**fLib**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <elementRef key="f" maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element fLib { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_f](#TEI.tei_f)+ } |

## <factuality>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<factuality>** describes the extent to which the text may be regarded as imaginative or non-imaginative, that is, as describing a fictional or a non-fictional world. [[15.2.1. The Text Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHTD)] | |
| **Module** | corpus |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | categorizes the factuality of the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **fiction** the text is to be regarded as entirely imaginative  **fact** the text is to be regarded as entirely informative or factual  **mixed** the text contains a mixture of fact and fiction  **inapplicable** the fiction/fact distinction is not regarded as helpful or appropriate to this text | | |
| **Member of** | model.textDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **corpus:** textDesc |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  character data |
| **Note** | Usually empty, unless some further clarification of the type attribute is needed, in which case it may contain running prose  For many literary texts, a simple binary opposition between ‘fiction’ and ‘fact’ is naïve in the extreme; this parameter is not intended for purposes of subtle literary analysis, but as a simple means of characterizing the claimed fictiveness of a given text. No claim is made that works characterized as ‘fact’ are in any sense ‘true’. |
| **Example** | <**factuality** **type**="fiction"/> |
| **Example** | <**factuality** **type**="mixed">contains a mixture of gossip and  speculation about real people and events</**factuality**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element factuality {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute type { "fiction" | "fact" | "mixed" | "inapplicable" }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

## <fileDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<fileDesc>** (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. [[2.2. The File Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2) [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** biblFull teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **header:** editionStmt extent notesStmt publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc titleStmt |
| **Note** | The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived. |
| **Example** | <**fileDesc**>  <**titleStmt**>   <**title**>The shortest possible TEI document</**title**>  </**titleStmt**>  <**publicationStmt**>   <**p**>Distributed as part of TEI P5</**p**>  </**publicationStmt**>  <**sourceDesc**>   <**p**>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</**p**>  </**sourceDesc**> </**fileDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <sequence>    <elementRef key="titleStmt"/>    <elementRef key="editionStmt"     minOccurs="0"/>    <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/>    <elementRef key="publicationStmt"/>    <elementRef key="seriesStmt"     minOccurs="0"/>    <elementRef key="notesStmt"     minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>   <elementRef key="sourceDesc"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element fileDesc {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  (  (  [tei\_titleStmt](#TEI.tei_titleStmt),  [tei\_editionStmt](#TEI.tei_editionStmt)?,  [tei\_extent](#TEI.tei_extent)?,  [tei\_publicationStmt](#TEI.tei_publicationStmt),  [tei\_seriesStmt](#TEI.tei_seriesStmt)?,  [tei\_notesStmt](#TEI.tei_notesStmt)?  ),  [tei\_sourceDesc](#TEI.tei_sourceDesc)+  ) } |

## <foreign>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<foreign>** identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text. [[3.3.2.1. Foreign Words or Expressions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQHF)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s span  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | The global *@xml:lang* attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere, its value should be a language tag as defined in [6.1. Language Identification](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CH.html#CHSH).  This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global *@xml:lang* attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element.  The <distinct> element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages. |
| **Example** | This is  heathen Greek to you still? Your <**foreign** **xml:lang**="la">lapis  philosophicus</**foreign**>? |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element foreign { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq) } |

## <front>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<front>** (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, abstracts, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL) [4. Default Text Structure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** text |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** cb divGen gap head index lb listBibl meeting milestone note p pb  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle postscript salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **Note** | Because cultural conventions differ as to which elements are grouped as front matter and which as back matter, the content models for the <front> and <back> elements are identical. |
| **Example** | <**front**>  <**epigraph**>   <**quote**>Nam Sibyllam quidem Cumis ego ipse oculis meis vidi in ampulla      pendere, et cum illi pueri dicerent: <**q** **xml:lang**="gr">Σίβυλλα τί        θέλεις</**q**>; respondebat illa: <**q** **xml:lang**="gr">ὰποθανεῖν θέλω.</**q**>   </**quote**>  </**epigraph**>  <**div** **type**="dedication">   <**p**>For Ezra Pound <**q** **xml:lang**="it">il miglior fabbro.</**q**>   </**p**>  </**div**> </**front**> |
| **Example** | <**front**>  <**div** **type**="dedication">   <**p**>To our three selves</**p**>  </**div**>  <**div** **type**="preface">   <**head**>Author's Note</**head**>   <**p**>All the characters in this book are purely imaginary, and if the      author has used names that may suggest a reference to living persons      she has done so inadvertently. ...</**p**>  </**div**> </**front**> |
| **Example** | <**front**>  <**div** **type**="abstract">   <**div**>    <**head**> BACKGROUND:</**head**>    <**p**>Food insecurity can put children at greater risk of obesity because        of altered food choices and nonuniform consumption patterns.</**p**>   </**div**>   <**div**>    <**head**> OBJECTIVE:</**head**>    <**p**>We examined the association between obesity and both child-level        food insecurity and personal food insecurity in US children.</**p**>   </**div**>   <**div**>    <**head**> DESIGN:</**head**>    <**p**>Data from 9,701 participants in the National Health and Nutrition        Examination Survey, 2001-2010, aged 2 to 11 years were analyzed.        Child-level food insecurity was assessed with the US Department of        Agriculture's Food Security Survey Module based on eight        child-specific questions. Personal food insecurity was assessed with        five additional questions. Obesity was defined, using physical        measurements, as body mass index (calculated as kg/m2) greater than        or equal to the age- and sex-specific 95th percentile of the Centers        for Disease Control and Prevention growth charts. Logistic        regressions adjusted for sex, race/ethnic group, poverty level, and        survey year were conducted to describe associations between obesity        and food insecurity.</**p**>   </**div**>   <**div**>    <**head**> RESULTS:</**head**>    <**p**>Obesity was significantly associated with personal food insecurity        for children aged 6 to 11 years (odds ratio=1.81; 95% CI 1.33 to        2.48), but not in children aged 2 to 5 years (odds ratio=0.88; 95%        CI 0.51 to 1.51). Child-level food insecurity was not associated        with obesity among 2- to 5-year-olds or 6- to 11-year-olds.</**p**>   </**div**>   <**div**>    <**head**> CONCLUSIONS:</**head**>    <**p**>Personal food insecurity is associated with an increased risk of        obesity only in children aged 6 to 11 years. Personal        food-insecurity measures may give different results than aggregate        food-insecurity measures in children.</**p**>   </**div**>  </**div**> </**front**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>    <classRef key="model.pLike"/>    <classRef key="model.pLike.front"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>   </alternate>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <alternate>     <sequence>      <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"       minOccurs="0">       <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>       <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>       <classRef key="model.global"/>      </alternate>     </sequence>     <sequence>      <classRef key="model.divLike"/>      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"       minOccurs="0">       <classRef key="model.divLike"/>       <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>       <classRef key="model.global"/>      </alternate>     </sequence>    </alternate>    <sequence minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>      <classRef key="model.global"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element front {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declaring),  (  (  [tei\_model.frontPart](#TEI.tei_model.frontPart) | [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike) | [tei\_model.pLike.front](#TEI.tei_model.pLike.front) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\*,  (  (  (  [tei\_model.div1Like](#TEI.tei_model.div1Like),  ( [tei\_model.div1Like](#TEI.tei_model.div1Like) | [tei\_model.frontPart](#TEI.tei_model.frontPart) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\*  )  | (  [tei\_model.divLike](#TEI.tei_model.divLike),  ( [tei\_model.divLike](#TEI.tei_model.divLike) | [tei\_model.frontPart](#TEI.tei_model.frontPart) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\*  )  ),  ( [tei\_model.divBottom](#TEI.tei_model.divBottom), ( [tei\_model.divBottom](#TEI.tei_model.divBottom) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\* )?  )?  ) } |

## <fs>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<fs>** (feature structure) represents a feature structure, that is, a collection of feature-value pairs organized as a structural unit. [[18.2. Elementary Feature Structures and the Binary Feature Value](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FSBI)] | |
| **Module** | iso-fs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | specifies the type of the feature structure.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | | **feats** | (features) references the feature-value specifications making up this feature structure.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | **Note** | May be used either instead of having features as content, or in addition. In the latter case, the features referenced and contained are unified. | | |
| **Member of** | model.featureVal.complex model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl m phr s span w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **iso-fs:** f fvLib vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vRange  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **iso-fs:** f |
| **Example** | <**fs** **type**="agreement\_structure">  <**f** **name**="person">   <**symbol** **value**="third"/>  </**f**>  <**f** **name**="number">   <**symbol** **value**="singular"/>  </**f**> </**fs**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <elementRef key="f" maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element fs {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datcat.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datcat),  attribute type { text }?,  attribute feats { list { + } }?,  [tei\_f](#TEI.tei_f)\* } |

## <fsDecl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<fsDecl>** (feature structure declaration) declares one type of feature structure. [[18.11. Feature System Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FD)] | |
| **Module** | iso-fs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | gives a name for the type of feature structure being declared.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | | **baseTypes** | gives the name of one or more typed feature structures from which this type inherits feature specifications and constraints; if this type includes a feature specification with the same name as that of any of those specified by this attribute, or if more than one specification of the same name is inherited, then the set of possible values is defined by unification. Similarly, the set of constraints applicable is derived by combining those specified explicitly within this element with those implied by the *@baseTypes* attribute. When no *@baseTypes* attribute is specified, no feature specification or constraint is inherited.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.name](#teidata.name) separated by whitespace | | **Note** | Inheritance is defined here as a monotonous relation.  The process of combining constraints may result in a contradiction, for example if two specifications for the same feature specify disjoint ranges of values, and at least one such specification is mandatory. In such a case, there is no valid representative for the type being defined. | | |
| **Contained by** | **iso-fs:** fsdDecl |
| **May contain** | **iso-fs:** fDecl fsDescr |
| **Example** | <**fsDecl** **type**="SomeName">  <**fsDescr**>Describes what this type of fs represents</**fsDescr**>  <**fDecl** **name**="featureOne"> <!-- The declaration for featureOne -->   <**vRange**> <!-- the range of possible values for this feature -->   </**vRange**>  </**fDecl**>  <**fDecl** **name**="featureTwo"> <!-- The declaration for featureTwo -->   <**vRange**> <!-- the range of possible values for this feature -->   </**vRange**>  </**fDecl**>  <**fsConstraints**> <!-- Any additional constraints for the feature structure -->  </**fsConstraints**> </**fsDecl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="fsDescr" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="fDecl"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <elementRef key="fsConstraints"    minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element fsDecl {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute type { text },  attribute baseTypes { list { + } }?,  ( [tei\_fsDescr](#TEI.tei_fsDescr)?, [tei\_fDecl](#TEI.tei_fDecl)+, [fsConstraints](#TEI.fsConstraints)? ) } |

## <fsDescr>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<fsDescr>** (feature system description (in FSD)) describes in prose what is represented by the type of feature structure declared in the enclosing fsDecl. [[18.11. Feature System Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FD)] | |
| **Module** | iso-fs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **iso-fs:** fsDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title  **header:** biblFull idno  character data |
| **Note** | May contain character data, phrase-level elements, and inter-level elements. |
| **Example** | <**fsDecl** **type**="Agreement">  <**fsDescr**>This type of feature structure encodes the features    for subject-verb agreement in English</**fsDescr**>  <**fDecl** **name**="PERS">   <**fDescr**>person (first, second, or third)</**fDescr**>   <**vRange**>    <**vAlt**>     <**symbol** **value**="first"/>     <**symbol** **value**="second"/>     <**symbol** **value**="third"/>    </**vAlt**>   </**vRange**>  </**fDecl**>  <**fDecl** **name**="NUM">   <**fDescr**>number (singular or plural)</**fDescr**>   <**vRange**>    <**vAlt**>     <**symbol** **value**="singular"/>     <**symbol** **value**="plural"/>    </**vAlt**>   </**vRange**>  </**fDecl**> </**fsDecl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element fsDescr { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_macro.limitedContent](#TEI.tei_macro.limitedContent) } |

## <fsdDecl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<fsdDecl>** (feature system declaration) provides a feature system declaration comprising one or more feature structure declarations or feature structure declaration links. [[18.11. Feature System Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FD)] | |
| **Module** | iso-fs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart model.resourceLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** teiCorpus  **header:** encodingDesc  **textstructure:** TEI |
| **May contain** | **iso-fs:** fsDecl |
| **Example** | <**fsdDecl**>  <**fsDecl** **type**="GPSG">   <**fDecl** **name**="GPSG\_feat1" **xml:id**="GPSG-1">    <**vRange**>     <**vAlt**>      <**symbol** **value**="red"/>      <**symbol** **value**="blue"/>      <**symbol** **value**="green"/>     </**vAlt**>    </**vRange**>   </**fDecl**> <!--other feature declarations for GPSG here ... -->  </**fsDecl**>  <**fsdLink** **target**="http://www.example.com/fsdLib.xml#LX123"   **type**="subentry"/> </**fsdDecl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="1">   <elementRef key="fsDecl"/>   <elementRef key="fsdLink"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element fsdDecl { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), ( [tei\_fsDecl](#TEI.tei_fsDecl) | [fsdLink](#TEI.fsdLink) )+ } |

## <funder>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<funder>** (funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization responsible for the funding of a project or text. [[2.2.1. The Title Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl monogr  **header:** editionStmt titleStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  character data |
| **Note** | Funders provide financial support for a project; they are distinct from sponsors (see element <sponsor>), who provide intellectual support and authority. |
| **Example** | <**funder**>The National Endowment for the Humanities, an independent federal agency</**funder**> <**funder**>Directorate General XIII of the Commission of the European Communities</**funder**> <**funder**>The Andrew W. Mellon Foundation</**funder**> <**funder**>The Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of Canada</**funder**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element funder {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.canonical),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

## <fvLib>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<fvLib>** (feature-value library) assembles a library of reusable feature value elements (including complete feature structures). [[18.4. Feature Libraries and Feature-Value Libraries](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FSFL)] | |
| **Module** | iso-fs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl m phr s span w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **iso-fs:** binary default fs numeric string symbol vAlt vColl vLabel |
| **Note** | A feature value library may include any number of values of any kind, including multiple occurrences of identical values such as <binary value="true"/> or default. The only thing guaranteed unique in a feature value library is the set of labels used to identify the values. |
| **Example** | <**fvLib** **n**="symbolic values">  <**symbol** **value**="first" **xml:id**="sfirst"/>  <**symbol** **value**="second" **xml:id**="ssecond"/> <!-- ... -->  <**symbol** **value**="singular" **xml:id**="ssing"/>  <**symbol** **value**="plural" **xml:id**="splur"/> <!-- ... --> </**fvLib**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.featureVal"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element fvLib { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_model.featureVal](#TEI.tei_model.featureVal)\* } |

## <g>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<g>** (character or glyph) represents a glyph, or a non-standard character. [[5. Characters, Glyphs, and Writing Modes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/WD.html#WD)] | |
| **Module** | gaiji |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **ref** | points to a description of the character or glyph intended.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | |
| **Member of** | model.gLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure measureGrp mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said series sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **gaiji:** mapping value  **header:** change distributor edition extent geoDecl idno licence  **iso-fs:** string  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | Character data only |
| **Note** | The name g is short for gaiji, which is the Japanese term for a non-standardized character or glyph. |
| **Example** | <**g** **ref**="#ctlig">ct</**g**>  This example points to a <glyph> element with the identifier ctlig like the following:  <**glyph** **xml:id**="ctlig"> <!-- here we describe the particular ct-ligature intended --> </**glyph**> |
| **Example** | <**g** **ref**="#per-glyph">per</**g**>  The medieval brevigraph per could similarly be considered as an individual glyph, defined in a <glyph> element with the identifier per like the following:  <**glyph** **xml:id**="per-glyph"> <!-- ... --> </**glyph**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element g {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute ref { text }?,  text } |

## <gap>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<gap>** indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible. [[3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDADD)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.timed (@start, @end) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) )   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **reason** | gives the reason for omission   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) separated by whitespace | | **Suggested values include:** | **cancelled**  **deleted**  **editorial** for features omitted from transcription due to editorial policy  **illegible**  **inaudible**  **irrelevant**  **sampling** | | | **hand** | in the case of text omitted from the transcription because of deliberate deletion by an identifiable hand, indicates the hand which made the deletion.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | [Deprecated](http://www.tei-c.org/Activities/Council/Working/tcw27.xml) | will be removed on 2017-08-01 | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | | **agent** | in the case of text omitted because of damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Sample values include:** | **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges  **mildew** damage results from mildew on the leaf surface  **smoke** damage results from smoke | | |
| **Member of** | model.global.edit |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl m phr s span w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc |
| **Note** | The <gap>, <unclear>, and <del> core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the <damage> and <supplied> elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section [11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHCOMB) for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.  The <gap> tag simply signals the editors decision to omit or inability to transcribe a span of text. Other information, such as the interpretation that text was deliberately erased or covered, should be indicated using the relevant tags, such as <del> in the case of deliberate deletion. |
| **Example** | <**gap** **quantity**="4" **reason**="illegible"  **unit**="chars"/> |
| **Example** | <**gap** **quantity**="1" **reason**="sampling"  **unit**="essay"/> |
| **Example** | <**del**>  <**gap** **atLeast**="4" **atMost**="8"   **reason**="illegible" **unit**="chars"/> </**del**> |
| **Example** | <**gap** **extent**="several lines" **reason**="lost"/> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <classRef key="model.descLike"/>   <classRef key="model.certLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element gap {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.timed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.timed),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  attribute reason  {  list  {  (  "cancelled"  | "deleted"  | "editorial"  | "illegible"  | "inaudible"  | "irrelevant"  | "sampling"  )+  }  }?,  attribute hand { text }?,  attribute agent { text }?,  ( [tei\_model.descLike](#TEI.tei_model.descLike) | [tei\_model.certLike](#TEI.tei_model.certLike) )\* } |

## <geoDecl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<geoDecl>** (geographic coordinates declaration) documents the notation and the datum used for geographic coordinates expressed as content of the <geo> element elsewhere within the document. [[2.3.8. The Geographic Coordinates Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HDGDECL)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **datum** | supplies a commonly used code name for the datum employed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Suggested values include:** | **WGS84** (World Geodetic System) a pair of numbers to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the World Geodetic System. [Default]  **MGRS** (Military Grid Reference System) the values supplied are geospatial entity object codes, based on  **OSGB36** (ordnance survey great britain) the value supplied is to be interpreted as a British National Grid Reference.  **ED50** (European Datum coordinate system) the value supplied is to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the European Datum coordinate system. | | |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**geoDecl** **datum**="OSGB36"/> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element geoDecl {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  attribute datum { "WGS84" | "MGRS" | "OSGB36" | "ED50" }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <gloss>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<gloss>** identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase. [[3.3.4. Terms, Glosses, Equivalents, and Descriptions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQU) [22.4.1. Description of Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TDcrystalsCEdc)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.translatable (@versionDate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.cReferencing (@cRef) |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike model.glossLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s span  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority catDesc category change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage taxonomy  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab joinGrp seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | The *@target* and *@cRef* attributes are mutually exclusive. |
| **Example** | We may define <**term** **rend**="sc" **xml:id**="tdpv">discoursal point of view</**term**> as  <**gloss** **target**="#tdpv">the relationship, expressed  through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the  fiction.</**gloss**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element gloss {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declaring),  [tei\_att.translatable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.translatable),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.pointing),  [tei\_att.cReferencing.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.cReferencing),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <glyph>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<glyph>** (character glyph) provides descriptive information about a character glyph. [[5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/WD.html#D25-20)] | |
| **Module** | gaiji |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **gaiji:** charDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** binaryObject desc graphic media note  **gaiji:** charProp glyphName mapping |
| **Example** | <**glyph** **xml:id**="rstroke">  <**glyphName**>LATIN SMALL LETTER R WITH A FUNNY STROKE</**glyphName**>  <**charProp**>   <**localName**>entity</**localName**>   <**value**>rstroke</**value**>  </**charProp**>  <**figure**>   <**graphic** **url**="glyph-rstroke.png"/>  </**figure**> </**glyph**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="glyphName" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.descLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="charProp"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="mapping"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="figure"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.graphicLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.noteLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element glyph {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  (  [tei\_glyphName](#TEI.tei_glyphName)?,  [tei\_model.descLike](#TEI.tei_model.descLike)\*,  [tei\_charProp](#TEI.tei_charProp)\*,  [tei\_mapping](#TEI.tei_mapping)\*,  [figure](#TEI.figure)\*,  [tei\_model.graphicLike](#TEI.tei_model.graphicLike)\*,  [tei\_model.noteLike](#TEI.tei_model.noteLike)\*  ) } |

## <glyphName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<glyphName>** (character glyph name) contains the name of a glyph, expressed following Unicode conventions for character names. [[5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/WD.html#D25-20)] | |
| **Module** | gaiji |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **gaiji:** glyph |
| **May contain** | Character data only |
| **Note** | For characters of non-ideographic scripts, a name following the conventions for Unicode names should be chosen. For ideographic scripts, an Ideographic Description Sequence (IDS) as described in Chapter 10.1 of the Unicode Standard is recommended where possible. Projects working in similar fields are recommended to coordinate and publish their list of <glyphName>s to facilitate data exchange. |
| **Example** | <**glyphName**>CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA</**glyphName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element glyphName { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), text } |

## <graphic>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<graphic>** indicates the location of a graphic or illustration, either forming part of a text, or providing an image of it. [[3.9. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COGR) [11.1. Digital Facsimiles](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHFAX)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.media (@width, @height, @scale) (att.internetMedia (@mimeType)) att.resourced (@url) att.declaring (@decls) |
| **Member of** | model.graphicLike model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **gaiji:** char glyph  **header:** change distributor edition extent geoDecl licence  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc |
| **Note** | The *@mimeType* attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the image specified by the *@url* attribute.  Within the body of a text, a <graphic> element indicates the presence of a graphic component in the source itself. Within the context of a <facsimile> or <sourceDoc> element, however, a <graphic> element provides an additional digital representation of some part of the source being encoded. |
| **Example** | <**figure**>  <**graphic** **url**="fig1.png"/>  <**head**>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</**head**>  <**figDesc**>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground, and a    series of buoys strung out between them.</**figDesc**> </**figure**> |
| **Example** | <**facsimile**>  <**surfaceGrp** **n**="leaf1">   <**surface**>    <**graphic** **url**="page1.png"/>   </**surface**>   <**surface**>    <**graphic** **url**="page2-highRes.png"/>    <**graphic** **url**="page2-lowRes.png"/>   </**surface**>  </**surfaceGrp**> </**facsimile**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.descLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element graphic {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.media.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.media),  [tei\_att.resourced.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.resourced),  [tei\_att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declaring),  [tei\_model.descLike](#TEI.tei_model.descLike)\* } |

## <group>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<group>** contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc. [[4. Default Text Structure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS) [4.3.1. Grouped Texts](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSGRP) [15.1. Varieties of Composite Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** group text |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** cb gap head index lb meeting milestone note pb  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate group opener postscript salute signed text trailer |
| **Example** | <**text**> <!-- Section on Alexander Pope starts -->  <**front**> <!-- biographical notice by editor -->  </**front**>  <**group**>   <**text**> <!-- first poem -->   </**text**>   <**text**> <!-- second poem -->   </**text**>  </**group**> </**text**> <!-- end of Pope section--> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divTop"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>   </alternate>   <sequence>    <alternate>     <elementRef key="text"/>     <elementRef key="group"/>    </alternate>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <elementRef key="text"/>     <elementRef key="group"/>     <classRef key="model.global"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>   <classRef key="model.divBottom"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element group {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declaring),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  (  ( [tei\_model.divTop](#TEI.tei_model.divTop) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\*,  (  ( [tei\_text](#TEI.tei_text) | [tei\_group](#TEI.tei_group) ),  ( [tei\_text](#TEI.tei_text) | [tei\_group](#TEI.tei_group) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\*  ),  [tei\_model.divBottom](#TEI.tei_model.divBottom)\*  ) } |

## <head>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<head>** (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc. [[4.2.1. Headings and Trailers](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSHD)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.placement (@place) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.headLike model.pLike.front |
| **Contained by** | **core:** divGen lg list listBibl  **textstructure:** back body div front group postscript |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | The <head> element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a <head> element based on its structural position. A <head> occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a <div1> is the title of that chapter or section. |
| **Example** | The most common use for the <head> element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or incipits may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a <trailer>, as in this example:  <**div1** **n**="I" **type**="book">  <**head**>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the ecclesiastical history of    Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</**head**>  <**div2** **type**="section">   <**head**>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</**head**>   <**p**>Proposing as I do ...</**p**>   <**p**>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four hundred and twelve      years passed.</**p**>   <**trailer**>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five hundred and ninety-six      years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint Martin.</**trailer**>  </**div2**> </**div1**> |
| **Example** | When headings are not inline with the running text (see e.g. [the heading "Secunda conclusio"](http://diglib.hab.de/show_image.php?dir=drucke/ed000364&pointer=34)) they might however be encoded as if. The actual placement in the source document can be captured with the *@place* attribute.  <**div** **type**="subsection">  <**head** **place**="margin">Secunda conclusio</**head**>  <**p**>   <**lb** **n**="1251"/>   <**hi** **rend**="large">Potencia: habitus: et actus: recipiunt speciem ab obiectis<**supplied**>.</**supplied**>   </**hi**>   <**lb** **n**="1252"/>Probatur sic. Omne importans necessariam habitudinem ad proprium    [...]  </**p**> </**div**> |
| **Example** | The <head> element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:  With a few exceptions, connectives are equally  useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition, argument. <**list** **rend**="bulleted">  <**head**>Connectives</**head**>  <**item**>above</**item**>  <**item**>accordingly</**item**>  <**item**>across from</**item**>  <**item**>adjacent to</**item**>  <**item**>again</**item**>  <**item**> <!-- ... -->  </**item**> </**list**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <elementRef key="lg"/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.inter"/>   <classRef key="model.lLike"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element head {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.placement.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.placement),  [tei\_att.written.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.written),  (  text  | [tei\_lg](#TEI.tei_lg) | [tei\_model.gLike](#TEI.tei_model.gLike) | [tei\_model.phrase](#TEI.tei_model.phrase) | [tei\_model.inter](#TEI.tei_model.inter) | [tei\_model.lLike](#TEI.tei_model.lLike) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\* } |

## <headItem>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<headItem>** (heading for list items) contains the heading for the item or gloss column in a glossary list or similar structured list. [[3.7. Lists](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COLI)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** list |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | The <headItem> element may appear only if each item in the list is preceded by a <label>. |
| **Example** | The simple, straightforward statement of an  idea is preferable to the use of a worn-out expression. <**list** **type**="gloss">  <**headLabel** **rend**="smallcaps">TRITE</**headLabel**>  <**headItem** **rend**="smallcaps">SIMPLE, STRAIGHTFORWARD</**headItem**>  <**label**>bury the hatchet</**label**>  <**item**>stop fighting, make peace</**item**>  <**label**>at loose ends</**label**>  <**item**>disorganized</**item**>  <**label**>on speaking terms</**label**>  <**item**>friendly</**item**>  <**label**>fair and square</**label**>  <**item**>completely honest</**item**>  <**label**>at death's door</**label**>  <**item**>near death</**item**> </**list**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element headItem { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq) } |

## <headLabel>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<headLabel>** (heading for list labels) contains the heading for the label or term column in a glossary list or similar structured list. [[3.7. Lists](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COLI)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** list |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | The <headLabel> element may appear only if each item in the list is preceded by a <label>. |
| **Example** | The simple, straightforward statement of an  idea is preferable to the use of a worn-out expression. <**list** **type**="gloss">  <**headLabel** **rend**="smallcaps">TRITE</**headLabel**>  <**headItem** **rend**="smallcaps">SIMPLE, STRAIGHTFORWARD</**headItem**>  <**label**>bury the hatchet</**label**>  <**item**>stop fighting, make peace</**item**>  <**label**>at loose ends</**label**>  <**item**>disorganized</**item**>  <**label**>on speaking terms</**label**>  <**item**>friendly</**item**>  <**label**>fair and square</**label**>  <**item**>completely honest</**item**>  <**label**>at death's door</**label**>  <**item**>near death</**item**> </**list**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element headLabel { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq) } |

## <hi>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<hi>** (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made. [[3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and Phrases](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQHE) [3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQH)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.hiLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl m phr s span w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**hi** **rend**="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</**hi**>  that the said <**hi** **rend**="italic">Walter Shandy</**hi**>, merchant,  in consideration of the said intended marriage ... |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element hi {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.written.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.written),  [tei\_macro.paraContent](#TEI.tei_macro.paraContent)} |

## <hyphenation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<hyphenation>** summarizes the way in which hyphenation in a source text has been treated in an encoded version of it. [[2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD53) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **eol** | (end-of-line) indicates whether or not end-of-line hyphenation has been retained in a text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **all** all end-of-line hyphenation has been retained, even though the lineation of the original may not have been.  **some** end-of-line hyphenation has been retained in some cases. [Default]  **hard** all soft end-of-line hyphenation has been removed: any remaining end-of-line hyphenation should be retained.  **none** all end-of-line hyphenation has been removed: any remaining hyphenation occurred within the line. | | |
| **Member of** | model.editorialDeclPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** editorialDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab |
| **Example** | <**hyphenation** **eol**="some">  <**p**>End-of-line hyphenation silently removed where appropriate</**p**> </**hyphenation**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.pLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element hyphenation {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  attribute eol { "all" | "some" | "hard" | "none" }?,  [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+ } |

## <idno>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<idno>** (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26) [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number, etc.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Suggested values include:** | **ISBN** International Standard Book Number: a 13- or (if assigned prior to 2007) 10-digit identifying number assigned by the publishing industry to a published book or similar item, registered with the [International ISBN Agency.](https://www.isbn-international.org)  **ISSN** International Standard Serial Number: an eight-digit number to uniquely identify a serial publication.  **DOI** Digital Object Identifier: a unique string of letters and numbers assigned to an electronic document.  **URI** Uniform Resource Identifier: a string of characters to uniquely identify a resource which usually contains indication of the means of accessing that resource, the name of its host, and its filepath.  **VIAF** A data number in the Virtual Internet Authority File assigned to link different names in catalogs around the world for the same entity.  **ESTC** English Short-Title Catalogue number: an identifying number assigned to a document in English printed in the British Isles or North America before 1801.  **OCLC** union catalog number in WorldCat representing a resource held by one or more of the member libraries in the global cooperative Online Computer Library Center. | | |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s span  **core:** abbr add addrLine address analytic author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned monogr name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl idno language licence principal publicationStmt rendition seriesStmt sponsor tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  character data |
| **Note** | <idno> should be used for labels which identify an object or concept in a formal cataloguing system such as a database or an RDF store, or in a distributed system such as the World Wide Web. Some suggested values for *@type* on <idno> are ISBN, ISSN, DOI, and URI. |
| **Example** | <**idno** **type**="ISBN">978-1-906964-22-1</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="ISSN">0143-3385</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="DOI">10.1000/123</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="URI">http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/185922478</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="URI">http://authority.nzetc.org/463/</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="LT">Thomason Tract E.537(17)</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="Wing">C695</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="oldCat">  <**g** **ref**="#sym"/>345 </**idno**>  In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a <glyph> or <char> element referenced here as #sym. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <elementRef key="idno"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element idno {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute type  {  "ISBN" | "ISSN" | "DOI" | "URI" | "VIAF" | "ESTC" | "OCLC"  }?,  ( text | [tei\_model.gLike](#TEI.tei_model.gLike) | [tei\_idno](#TEI.tei_idno) )\* } |

## <imprimatur>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<imprimatur>** contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** titlePage |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**imprimatur**>Licensed and entred acording to Order.</**imprimatur**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element imprimatur { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_macro.paraContent](#TEI.tei_macro.paraContent) } |

## <imprint>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<imprint>** groups information relating to the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [[3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** monogr |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** biblScope cb date gap index lb milestone note pb pubPlace publisher respStmt time  **header:** catRef classCode distributor  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline |
| **Example** | <**imprint**>  <**pubPlace**>Oxford</**pubPlace**>  <**publisher**>Clarendon Press</**publisher**>  <**date**>1987</**date**> </**imprint**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="classCode"/>    <elementRef key="catRef"/>   </alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <alternate>     <classRef key="model.imprintPart"/>     <classRef key="model.dateLike"/>    </alternate>    <elementRef key="respStmt"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element imprint {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  (  ( [tei\_classCode](#TEI.tei_classCode) | [tei\_catRef](#TEI.tei_catRef) )\*,  (  ( [tei\_model.imprintPart](#TEI.tei_model.imprintPart) | [tei\_model.dateLike](#TEI.tei_model.dateLike) ),  [tei\_respStmt](#TEI.tei_respStmt)\*,  [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\*  )+  ) } |

## <index>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<index>** (index entry) marks a location to be indexed for whatever purpose. [[3.8.2. Index Entries](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONOIX)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.spanning (@spanTo)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **indexName** | a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>), supplying a name to specify which index (of several) the index entry belongs to.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.name](#teidata.name) | | **Note** | This attribute makes it possible to create multiple indexes for a text. | | |
| **Member of** | model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl m phr s span w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint index item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** index term |
| **Example** | David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen <**index** **indexName**="NAMES">  <**term**>Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</**term**> </**index**> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura <**index** **indexName**="PLACES">  <**term**>Sura</**term**> </**index**> was David's own first cousin. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <elementRef key="term"/>   <elementRef key="index" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element index {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.spanning.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.spanning),  attribute indexName { text }?,  ( [tei\_term](#TEI.tei_term), [tei\_index](#TEI.tei_index)? )\* } |

## <interaction>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<interaction>** describes the extent, cardinality and nature of any interaction among those producing and experiencing the text, for example in the form of response or interjection, commentary, etc. [[15.2.1. The Text Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHTD)] | |
| **Module** | corpus |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | specifies the degree of interaction between active and passive participants in the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **none** no interaction of any kind, e.g. a monologue  **partial** some degree of interaction, e.g. a monologue with set responses  **complete** complete interaction, e.g. a face to face conversation  **inapplicable** this parameter is inappropriate or inapplicable in this case | | | **active** | specifies the number of active participants (or addressors) producing parts of the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Suggested values include:** | **singular** a single addressor  **plural** many addressors  **corporate** a corporate addressor  **unknown** number of addressors unknown or unspecifiable | | | **passive** | specifies the number of passive participants (or addressees) to whom a text is directed or in whose presence it is created or performed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Suggested values include:** | **self** text is addressed to the originator e.g. a diary  **single** text is addressed to one other person e.g. a personal letter  **many** text is addressed to a countable number of others e.g. a conversation in which all participants are identified  **group** text is addressed to an undefined but fixed number of participants e.g. a lecture  **world** text is addressed to an undefined and indeterminately large number e.g. a published book | | |
| **Member of** | model.textDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **corpus:** textDesc |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**interaction** **active**="plural" **passive**="many"  **type**="complete"/> |
| **Example** | <**interaction** **active**="singular"  **passive**="group" **type**="none"/> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element interaction {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute type { "none" | "partial" | "complete" | "inapplicable" }?,  attribute active { "singular" | "plural" | "corporate" | "unknown" }?,  attribute passive { "self" | "single" | "many" | "group" | "world" }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

## <interpretation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<interpretation>** describes the scope of any analytic or interpretive information added to the text in addition to the transcription. [[2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD53)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.editorialDeclPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** editorialDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab |
| **Example** | <**interpretation**>  <**p**>The part of speech analysis applied throughout section 4 was added by hand and has not    been checked</**p**> </**interpretation**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.pLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element interpretation {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+ } |

## <item>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<item>** contains one component of a list. [[3.7. Lists](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COLI) [2.6. The Revision Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** list |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks.  Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global *@n* attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the *@n* attribute on the <item> element is by definition synonymous with the use of the <label> element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the <label> element, not *@n*. |
| **Example** | <**list** **rend**="numbered">  <**head**>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</**head**>  <**item** **n**="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</**item**>  <**item** **n**="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the Church revenues.</**item**>  <**item** **n**="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</**item**>  <**item** **n**="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</**item**>  <**item** **n**="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</**item**>  <**item** **n**="4.6">The priest Cato.</**item**>  <**item**> ...</**item**> </**list**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element item {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  [tei\_macro.specialPara](#TEI.tei_macro.specialPara)} |

## <join>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<join>** identifies a possibly fragmented segment of text, by pointing at the possibly discontiguous elements which compose it. [[16.7. Aggregation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAAG)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **result** | specifies the name of an element which this aggregation may be understood to represent.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.name](#teidata.name) | | | **scope** | indicates whether the targets to be joined include the entire element indicated (the entire subtree including its root), or just the children of the target (the branches of the subtree).   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **root** the rooted subtrees indicated by the *@target* attribute are joined, each subtree become a child of the virtual element created by the join [Default]  **branches** the children of the subtrees indicated by the *@target* attribute become the children of the virtual element (i.e. the roots of the subtrees are discarded) | | |
| **Member of** | model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl m phr s span w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** ab joinGrp seg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc |
| **Example** | The following example is discussed in section <#SAAG>:  <**sp**>  <**speaker**>Hughie</**speaker**>  <**p**>How does it go? <**q**>    <**l** **xml:id**="frog\_x1">da-da-da</**l**>    <**l** **xml:id**="frog\_l2">gets a new frog</**l**>    <**l**>...</**l**>   </**q**>  </**p**> </**sp**> <**sp**>  <**speaker**>Louie</**speaker**>  <**p**>   <**q**>    <**l** **xml:id**="frog\_l1">When the old pond</**l**>    <**l**>...</**l**>   </**q**>  </**p**> </**sp**> <**sp**>  <**speaker**>Dewey</**speaker**>  <**p**>   <**q**>... <**l** **xml:id**="frog\_l3">It's a new pond.</**l**>   </**q**>  </**p**>  <**join** **result**="lg" **scope**="root"   **target**="#frog\_l1 #frog\_l2 #frog\_l3"/> </**sp**>  The <join> element here identifies a linegroup (<lg>) comprising the three lines indicated by the *@target* attribute. The value root for the *@scope* attribute indicates that the resulting virtual element contains the three <l> elements linked to at #frog\_l1 #frog\_l2 #frog\_l3, rather than their character data content. |
| **Example** | In this example, the attribute *@scope* is specified with the value of branches to indicate that the virtual list being constructed is to be made by taking the lists indicated by the *@target* attribute of the <join> element, discarding the <list> tags which enclose them, and combining the items contained within the lists into a single virtual list:  <**p**>Southern dialect (my own variety, at least) has only <**list** **xml:id**="LP1">   <**item**>    <**s**>I done gone</**s**>   </**item**>   <**item**>    <**s**>I done went</**s**>   </**item**>  </**list**> whereas Negro Non-Standard basilect has both these and <**list** **xml:id**="LP2">   <**item**>    <**s**>I done go</**s**>   </**item**>  </**list**>.</**p**> <**p**>White Southern dialect also has <**list** **xml:id**="LP3">   <**item**>    <**s**>I've done gone</**s**>   </**item**>   <**item**>    <**s**>I've done went</**s**>   </**item**>  </**list**> which, when they occur in Negro dialect, should probably be considered as borrowings from other varieties of English.</**p**> <**join** **result**="list" **scope**="branches"  **target**="#LP1 #LP2 #LP3" **xml:id**="LST1">  <**desc**>Sample sentences in Southern speech</**desc**> </**join**> |
| **Schematron** | <s:assert test="contains(@target,' ')">You must supply at least two values for @target on <s:name/> </s:assert> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <classRef key="model.descLike"/>   <classRef key="model.certLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element join {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.pointing),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute result { text }?,  attribute scope { "root" | "branches" }?,  ( [tei\_model.descLike](#TEI.tei_model.descLike) | [tei\_model.certLike](#TEI.tei_model.certLike) )\* } |

## <joinGrp>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<joinGrp>** (join group) groups a collection of <join> elements and possibly pointers. [[16.7. Aggregation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAAG)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing.group (@domains, @targFunc) (att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)) (att.typed (@type, @subtype))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **result** | supplies the default value for the *@result* on each <join> included within the group.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.name](#teidata.name) | | |
| **Member of** | model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl m phr s span w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** gloss ptr  **linking:** join |
| **Note** | Any number of <join> or <ptr> elements. |
| **Example** | <**joinGrp** **domains**="#zuitxt1 #zuitxt2 #zuitxt3"  **result**="q">  <**join** **target**="#zuiq1 #zuiq2 #zuiq6"/>  <**join** **target**="#zuiq3 #zuiq4 #zuiq5"/> </**joinGrp**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.glossLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <elementRef key="join"/>    <elementRef key="ptr"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element joinGrp {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.pointing.group.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.pointing.group),  attribute result { text }?,  ( [tei\_model.glossLike](#TEI.tei_model.glossLike)\*, ( [tei\_join](#TEI.tei_join) | [tei\_ptr](#TEI.tei_ptr) )+ ) } |

## <keywords>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<keywords>** contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. [[2.4.3. The Text Classification](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD43)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **scheme** | identifies the controlled vocabulary within which the set of keywords concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element, or by some other resource.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | |
| **Contained by** | **header:** textClass |
| **May contain** | **core:** list term |
| **Note** | Each individual keyword (including compound subject headings) should be supplied as a <term> element directly within the <keywords> element. An alternative usage, in which each <term> appears within a <item> inside a <list> is permitted for backwards compatibility, but is deprecated.  If no control list exists for the keywords used, then no value should be supplied for the *@scheme* attribute. |
| **Example** | <**keywords** **scheme**="http://classificationweb.net">  <**term**>Babbage, Charles</**term**>  <**term**>Mathematicians - Great Britain - Biography</**term**> </**keywords**> |
| **Example** | <**keywords**>  <**term**>Fermented beverages</**term**>  <**term**>Central Andes</**term**>  <**term**>Schinus molle</**term**>  <**term**>Molle beer</**term**>  <**term**>Indigenous peoples</**term**>  <**term**>Ethnography</**term**>  <**term**>Archaeology</**term**> </**keywords**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <elementRef key="term"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <elementRef key="list"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element keywords {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute scheme { text }?,  ( [tei\_term](#TEI.tei_term)+ | [tei\_list](#TEI.tei_list) ) } |

## <l>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<l>** (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse. [[3.12.1. Core Tags for Verse](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COVE) [3.12. Passages of Verse or Drama](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CODV) [7.2.5. Speech Contents](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.fragmentable (@part) |
| **Member of** | model.lLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del emph head hi item lg note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear  **header:** change licence  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** body div docEdition imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**l** **met**="x/x/x/x/x/" **real**="/xx/x/x/x/">Shall I compare thee to a summer's day?</**l**> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:l[. = current()])]"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain lines or lg elements. </s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.inter"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element l {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.fragmentable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.fragmentable),  (  text  | [tei\_model.gLike](#TEI.tei_model.gLike) | [tei\_model.phrase](#TEI.tei_model.phrase) | [tei\_model.inter](#TEI.tei_model.inter) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\* } |

## <label>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<label>** contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary. [[3.7. Lists](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COLI)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.placement (@place) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.labelLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del desc emph head hi item l lg list meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic stage title unclear  **header:** application change licence rendition tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** body div docEdition imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | Labels are commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global *@xml:lang* attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:  <**list** **type**="gloss" **xml:lang**="enm">  <**head** **xml:lang**="en">Vocabulary</**head**>  <**headLabel** **xml:lang**="en">Middle English</**headLabel**>  <**headItem** **xml:lang**="en">New English</**headItem**>  <**label**>nu</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">now</**item**>  <**label**>lhude</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">loudly</**item**>  <**label**>bloweth</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">blooms</**item**>  <**label**>med</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">meadow</**item**>  <**label**>wude</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">wood</**item**>  <**label**>awe</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">ewe</**item**>  <**label**>lhouth</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">lows</**item**>  <**label**>sterteth</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">bounds, frisks (cf. <**cit**>    <**ref**>Chaucer, K.T.644</**ref**>    <**quote**>a courser, <**term**>sterting</**term**>as the fyr</**quote**>   </**cit**>  </**item**>  <**label**>verteth</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="la">pedit</**item**>  <**label**>murie</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">merrily</**item**>  <**label**>swik</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">cease</**item**>  <**label**>naver</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">never</**item**> </**list**> |
| **Example** | Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon's *Autobiography*. In this usage the <label> element is synonymous with the *@n* attribute on the <item> element:  I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred  in the composition of six, or at least of five quartos. <**list** **rend**="runon" **type**="ordered">  <**label**>(1)</**label**>  <**item**>My first rough manuscript, without any intermediate copy, has been sent to the press.</**item**>  <**label**>(2) </**label**>  <**item**>Not a sheet has been seen by any human eyes, excepting those of the author and the    printer: the faults and the merits are exclusively my own.</**item**> </**list**> |
| **Example** | Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of Edward Gibbon:  <**list** **type**="gloss">  <**label**>March 1757.</**label**>  <**item**>I wrote some critical observations upon Plautus.</**item**>  <**label**>March 8th.</**label**>  <**item**>I wrote a long dissertation upon some lines of Virgil.</**item**>  <**label**>June.</**label**>  <**item**>I saw Mademoiselle Curchod — <**quote** **xml:lang**="la">Omnia vincit amor, et nos cedamus      amori.</**quote**>  </**item**>  <**label**>August.</**label**>  <**item**>I went to Crassy, and staid two days.</**item**> </**list**>  Note that the <label> might also appear within the <item> rather than as its sibling. Though syntactically valid, this usage is not recommended TEI practice. |
| **Example** | Labels may also be used to represent a label or heading attached to a paragraph or sequence of paragraphs not treated as a structural division, or to a group of verse lines. Note that, in this case, the <label> element appears *within* the <p> or <lg> element, rather than as a preceding sibling of it.  <**p**>[...] <**lb**/>&amp; n’entrer en mauuais &amp; mal-heu- <**lb**/>ré meſnage. Or des que le conſente- <**lb**/>ment des parties y eſt le mariage eſt <**lb**/> arreſté, quoy que de faict il ne ſoit <**label** **place**="margin">Puiſſance maritale    entre les Romains.</**label**>  <**lb**/> conſommé. Depuis la conſomma- <**lb**/>tion du mariage la femme eſt ſoubs <**lb**/> la puiſſance du mary, s’il n’eſt eſcla- <**lb**/>ue ou enfant de famille : car en ce <**lb**/> cas, la femme, qui a eſpouſé vn en- <**lb**/>fant de famille, eſt ſous la puiſſance  [...]</**p**>  In this example the text of the label appears in the right hand margin of the original source, next to the paragraph it describes, but approximately in the middle of it. If so desired the *@type* attribute may be used to distinguish different categories of label. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element label {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.placement.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.placement),  [tei\_att.written.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.written),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <langUsage>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<langUsage>** (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text. [[2.4.2. Language Usage](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD41) [2.4. The Profile Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.profileDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** profileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **header:** language  **linking:** ab |
| **Example** | <**langUsage**>  <**language** **ident**="fr-CA" **usage**="60">Québecois</**language**>  <**language** **ident**="en-CA" **usage**="20">Canadian business English</**language**>  <**language** **ident**="en-GB" **usage**="20">British English</**language**> </**langUsage**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <elementRef key="language"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element langUsage {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  ( [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+ | [tei\_language](#TEI.tei_language)+ ) } |

## <language>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<language>** characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text. [[2.4.2. Language Usage](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD41)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **ident** | (identifier) Supplies a language code constructed as defined in [BCP 47](https://tools.ietf.org/html/bcp47) which is used to identify the language documented by this element, and which is referenced by the global *@xml:lang* attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [teidata.language](#teidata.language) | | | **usage** | specifies the approximate percentage (by volume) of the text which uses this language.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** |  | | |
| **Contained by** | **header:** langUsage |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  character data |
| **Note** | Particularly for sublanguages, an informal prose characterization should be supplied as content for the element. |
| **Example** | <**langUsage**>  <**language** **ident**="en-US" **usage**="75">modern American English</**language**>  <**language** **ident**="i-az-Arab" **usage**="20">Azerbaijani in Arabic script</**language**>  <**language** **ident**="x-lap" **usage**="05">Pig Latin</**language**> </**langUsage**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element language {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute ident { text },  attribute usage { text }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

## <lb>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<lb>** (line beginning) marks the beginning of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text. [[3.10.3. Milestone Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5) [7.2.5. Speech Contents](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break) |
| **Member of** | model.milestoneLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl m phr s span w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | By convention, <lb> elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The *@n* attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next <lb> element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the <l> element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked.  The *@type* attribute may be used to characterize the line break in any respect. The more specialized attributes *@break*, *@ed*, or *@edRef* should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the line break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives. |
| **Example** | This example shows typographical line breaks within metrical lines, where they occur at different places in different editions:  <**l**>Of Mans First Disobedience,<**lb** **ed**="1674"/> and<**lb** **ed**="1667"/> the Fruit</**l**> <**l**>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<**lb** **ed**="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</**l**> <**l**>Brought Death into the World,<**lb** **ed**="1667"/> and all<**lb** **ed**="1674"/> our woe,</**l**> |
| **Example** | This example encodes typographical line breaks as a means of preserving the visual appearance of a title page. The *@break* attribute is used to show that the line break does not (as elsewhere) mark the start of a new word.  <**titlePart**>  <**lb**/>With Additions, ne-<**lb** **break**="no"/>ver before Printed. </**titlePart**> |
| **Content model** | <content> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element lb {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.edition.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.edition),  [tei\_att.spanning.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.spanning),  [tei\_att.breaking.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.breaking),  empty } |

## <lg>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<lg>** (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc. [[3.12.1. Core Tags for Verse](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COVE) [3.12. Passages of Verse or Drama](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CODV) [7.2.5. Speech Contents](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) |
| **Member of** | macro.paraContent model.divPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del emph head hi item lg note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear  **header:** change licence  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** body div docEdition imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** cb desc gap head index l label lb lg meeting milestone note pb stage  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate opener postscript salute signed trailer |
| **Note** | contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading. |
| **Example** | <**lg** **type**="free">  <**l**>Let me be my own fool</**l**>  <**l**>of my own making, the sum of it</**l**> </**lg**> <**lg** **type**="free">  <**l**>is equivocal.</**l**>  <**l**>One says of the drunken farmer:</**l**> </**lg**> <**lg** **type**="free">  <**l**>leave him lay off it. And this is</**l**>  <**l**>the explanation.</**l**> </**lg**> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:assert test="count(descendant::tei:lg|descendant::tei:l|descendant::tei:gap) > 0">An lg element must contain at least one child l, lg or gap element.</sch:assert> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:lg[. = current()])]"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain line groups. </s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divTop"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>   </alternate>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.lLike"/>    <classRef key="model.stageLike"/>    <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>    <elementRef key="lg"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.lLike"/>    <classRef key="model.stageLike"/>    <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>    <elementRef key="lg"/>   </alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element lg {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.divLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.divLike),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declaring),  (  ( [tei\_model.divTop](#TEI.tei_model.divTop) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\*,  ( [tei\_model.lLike](#TEI.tei_model.lLike) | [tei\_model.stageLike](#TEI.tei_model.stageLike) | [tei\_model.labelLike](#TEI.tei_model.labelLike) | [tei\_lg](#TEI.tei_lg) ),  (  [tei\_model.lLike](#TEI.tei_model.lLike) | [tei\_model.stageLike](#TEI.tei_model.stageLike) | [tei\_model.labelLike](#TEI.tei_model.labelLike) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) | [tei\_lg](#TEI.tei_lg) )\*,  ( [tei\_model.divBottom](#TEI.tei_model.divBottom), [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\* )\*  ) } |

## <licence>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<licence>** contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) |
| **Member of** | model.availabilityPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** availability |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | A <licence> element should be supplied for each licence agreement applicable to the text in question. The *@target* attribute may be used to reference a full version of the licence. The *@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from* or *@to* attributes may be used in combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence. |
| **Example** | <**licence** **target**="http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-NZETC-Help.html#licensing"> Licence: Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 New Zealand Licence </**licence**> |
| **Example** | <**availability**>  <**licence** **notBefore**="2013-01-01"   **target**="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/">   <**p**>The Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence      applies to this document.</**p**>   <**p**>The licence was added on January 1, 2013.</**p**>  </**licence**> </**availability**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element licence {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.pointing),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_macro.specialPara](#TEI.tei_macro.specialPara)} |

## <link>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<link>** defines an association or hypertextual link among elements or passages, of some type not more precisely specifiable by other elements. [[16.1. Links](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAPT)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl m phr s span w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** ab linkGrp seg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | This element should only be used to encode associations not otherwise provided for by more specific elements.  The location of this element within a document has no significance, unless it is included within a <linkGrp>, in which case it may inherit the value of the *@type* attribute from the value given on the <linkGrp>. |
| **Example** | <**s** **n**="1">The state Supreme Court has refused to release <**rs** **xml:id**="R1">   <**rs** **xml:id**="R2">Rahway State Prison</**rs**> inmate</**rs**>  <**rs** **xml:id**="R3">James Scott</**rs**> on bail.</**s**> <**s** **n**="2">  <**rs** **xml:id**="R4">The fighter</**rs**> is serving 30-40 years  for a 1975 armed robbery conviction in <**rs** **xml:id**="R5">the penitentiary</**rs**>. </**s**> <!-- ... --> <**linkGrp** **type**="periphrasis">  <**link** **target**="#R1 #R3 #R4"/>  <**link** **target**="#R2 #R5"/> </**linkGrp**> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:assert test="contains(normalize-space(@target),' ')">You must supply at least two values for @target or on <sch:name/> </sch:assert> |
| **Content model** | <content> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element link {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.pointing),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  empty } |

## <linkGrp>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<linkGrp>** (link group) defines a collection of associations or hypertextual links. [[16.1. Links](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAPT)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing.group (@domains, @targFunc) (att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)) (att.typed (@type, @subtype)) |
| **Member of** | model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl m phr s span w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** ptr  **linking:** link |
| **Note** | May contain one or more <link> elements only, optionally with interspersed pointer elements.  A web or link group is an administrative convenience, which should be used to collect a set of links together for any purpose, not simply to supply a default value for the *@type* attribute. |
| **Example** | <**linkGrp** **type**="translation">  <**link** **target**="#CCS1 #SW1"/>  <**link** **target**="#CCS2 #SW2"/>  <**link** **target**="#CCS #SW"/> </**linkGrp**> <**div** **type**="volume" **xml:id**="CCS"  **xml:lang**="fr">  <**p**>   <**s** **xml:id**="CCS1">Longtemps, je me suis couché de bonne heure.</**s**>   <**s** **xml:id**="CCS2">Parfois, à peine ma bougie éteinte, mes yeux se fermaient si vite que je n'avais pas le temps de me dire : "Je m'endors."</**s**>  </**p**> <!-- ... --> </**div**> <**div** **type**="volume" **xml:id**="SW" **xml:lang**="en">  <**p**>   <**s** **xml:id**="SW1">For a long time I used to go to bed early.</**s**>   <**s** **xml:id**="SW2">Sometimes, when I had put out my candle, my eyes would close so quickly that I had not even time to say "I'm going to sleep."</**s**>  </**p**> <!-- ... --> </**div**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="1">   <elementRef key="link"/>   <elementRef key="ptr"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element linkGrp {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.pointing.group.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.pointing.group),  ( [tei\_link](#TEI.tei_link) | [tei\_ptr](#TEI.tei_ptr) )+ } |

## <list>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<list>** contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [[3.7. Lists](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COLI)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | describes the nature of the items in the list.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Suggested values include:** | **gloss** each list item glosses some term or concept, which is given by a <label> element preceding the list item.  **index** each list item is an entry in an index such as the alphabetical topical index at the back of a print volume.  **instructions** each list item is a step in a sequence of instructions, as in a recipe.  **litany** each list item is one of a sequence of petitions, supplications or invocations, typically in a religious ritual.  **syllogism** each list item is part of an argument consisting of two or more propositions and a final conclusion derived from them. | | **Note** | Previous versions of these Guidelines recommended the use of *@type* on <list> to encode the rendering or appearance of a list (whether it was bulleted, numbered, etc.). The current recommendation is to use the *@rend* or *@style* attributes for these aspects of a list, while using *@type* for the more appropriate task of characterizing the nature of the content of a list. | | **Note** | The formal syntax of the element declarations allows <label> tags to be omitted from lists tagged <list type="gloss">; this is however a semantic error. | | |
| **Member of** | model.listLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear  **header:** abstract change keywords licence rendition revisionDesc sourceDesc tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** back body div docEdition imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** cb gap head headItem headLabel index item label lb meeting milestone note pb  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate opener postscript salute signed trailer |
| **Note** | May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings. |
| **Example** | <**list** **rend**="numbered">  <**item**>a butcher</**item**>  <**item**>a baker</**item**>  <**item**>a candlestick maker, with  <**list** **rend**="bulleted">    <**item**>rings on his fingers</**item**>    <**item**>bells on his toes</**item**>   </**list**>  </**item**> </**list**> |
| **Example** | <**list** **rend**="bulleted" **type**="syllogism">  <**item**>All Cretans are liars.</**item**>  <**item**>Epimenides is a Cretan.</**item**>  <**item**>ERGO Epimenides is a liar.</**item**> </**list**> |
| **Example** | <**list** **rend**="simple" **type**="litany">  <**item**>God save us from drought.</**item**>  <**item**>God save us from pestilence.</**item**>  <**item**>God save us from wickedness in high places.</**item**>  <**item**>Praise be to God.</**item**> </**list**> |
| **Example** | The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):  <**div1** **type**="section">  <**head**>Athelstan's Ordinance</**head**>  <**list** **rend**="numbered">   <**item** **n**="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared who is caught with      the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of the goods is] over      eightpence.   <**list** **rend**="numbered">     <**item** **n**="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief with his          wergild — and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on that account — or to          clear himself by an oath of that amount.</**item**>     <**item** **n**="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself or to escape, he is          not to be spared [whether younger or older than twelve].</**item**>     <**item** **n**="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison 40 days, and he may          then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to stand surety for him          that he will desist for ever.</**item**>     <**item** **n**="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his wergild,          or to bring him back there.</**item**>     <**item** **n**="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his wergild,          whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and everyone of those who          supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a fine.</**item**>    </**list**>   </**item**>   <**item** **n**="2">Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these lordless men, from whom      no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to fetch back such a      person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting.   <**list** **rend**="numbered">     <**item** **n**="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on that appointed day,          he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters him is to strike him          down as a thief.</**item**>     <**item** **n**="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him with his wergild          or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</**item**>    </**list**>   </**item**>   <**item** **n**="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses justice and upholds      his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the value of the goods and      120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he demands justice as      often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have done, if he had      refused him justice.   <**list** **rend**="numbered">     <**item** **n**="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his slave, and it becomes          known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his wergild on the first          occasionp if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay all that he owns.</**item**>     <**item** **n**="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our reeves, who has been          an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable to the same.</**item**>    </**list**>   </**item**>   <**item** **n**="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced concerning treachery to      a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot deny it or is      afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.</**item**>  </**list**> </**div1**>  Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired. |
| **Example** | <**p**>These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public council ... and they  confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross, and afterwards  inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the sign of the Holy  Cross. <**list** **rend**="simple">   <**item**>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of York, have      subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with the sign of the Holy      Cross.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have subscribed with      the sign of the Holy Cross.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have subscribed with the      sign of the Holy Cross.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have subscribed with the      sign of the Holy Cross.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed with thef sign of      the Holy Cross.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with devout will.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the sign of the Holy      Cross.</**item**>  </**list**> </**p**> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:list[@type='gloss']"> <sch:assert test="tei:label">The content of a "gloss" list should include a sequence of one or more pairs of a label element followed by an item element</sch:assert> </sch:rule> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divTop"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>   </alternate>   <alternate>    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="1">     <elementRef key="item"/>     <classRef key="model.global"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>    </sequence>    <sequence>     <elementRef key="headLabel"      minOccurs="0"/>     <elementRef key="headItem"      minOccurs="0"/>     <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="1">      <elementRef key="label"/>      <classRef key="model.global"       maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>      <elementRef key="item"/>      <classRef key="model.global"       maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>     </sequence>    </sequence>   </alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element list {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  [tei\_att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute type  {  "gloss" | "index" | "instructions" | "litany" | "syllogism"  }?,  (  ( [tei\_model.divTop](#TEI.tei_model.divTop) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\*,  (  ( [tei\_item](#TEI.tei_item), [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\* )+  | (  [tei\_headLabel](#TEI.tei_headLabel)?,  [tei\_headItem](#TEI.tei_headItem)?,  ( [tei\_label](#TEI.tei_label), [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\*, [tei\_item](#TEI.tei_item), [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\* )+  )  ),  ( [tei\_model.divBottom](#TEI.tei_model.divBottom), [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\* )\*  ) } |

## <listBibl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listBibl>** (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind. [[3.11.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBITY) [2.2.7. The Source Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.biblLike model.frontPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl meeting note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem said sic stage title unclear  **header:** change licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** back body div docEdition front imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct cb head lb listBibl milestone pb  **header:** biblFull  **linking:** anchor |
| **Example** | <**listBibl**>  <**head**>Works consulted</**head**>  <**bibl**>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to    Literature in English (Yale, 1990)  </**bibl**>  <**biblStruct**>   <**analytic**>    <**title**>The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</**title**>   </**analytic**>   <**monogr**>    <**title**>The Penny Histories</**title**>    <**author**>Victor E Neuberg</**author**>    <**imprint**>     <**publisher**>OUP</**publisher**>     <**date**>1968</**date**>    </**imprint**>   </**monogr**>  </**biblStruct**> </**listBibl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="relation"/>    <elementRef key="listRelation"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listBibl {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  (  [tei\_model.headLike](#TEI.tei_model.headLike)\*,  ( [tei\_model.biblLike](#TEI.tei_model.biblLike) | [tei\_model.milestoneLike](#TEI.tei_model.milestoneLike) )+,  ( [relation](#TEI.relation) | [listRelation](#TEI.listRelation) )\*  ) } |

## <listChange>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listChange>** groups a number of change descriptions associated with either the creation of a source text or the revision of an encoded text. [[2.6. The Revision Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6) [11.7. Identifying Changes and Revisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PH-changes)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **ordered** | indicates whether the ordering of its child <change> elements is to be considered significant or not   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.truthValue](#teidata.truthValue) | | **Default** | true | | |
| **Contained by** | **header:** creation listChange revisionDesc |
| **May contain** | **header:** change listChange |
| **Note** | When this element appears within the <creation> element it documents the set of revision campaigns or stages identified during the evolution of the original text. When it appears within the <revisionDesc> element, it documents only changes made during the evolution of the encoded representation of that text. |
| **Example** | <**revisionDesc**>  <**listChange**>   <**change** **when**="1991-11-11" **who**="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </**change**>   <**change** **when**="1991-11-02" **who**="#MSM"> completed first draft </**change**>  </**listChange**> </**revisionDesc**> |
| **Example** | <**profileDesc**>  <**creation**>   <**listChange** **ordered**="true">    <**change** **xml:id**="CHG-1">First stage, written in ink by a writer</**change**>    <**change** **xml:id**="CHG-2">Second stage, written in Goethe's hand using pencil</**change**>    <**change** **xml:id**="CHG-3">Fixation of the revised passages and further revisions by        Goethe using ink</**change**>    <**change** **xml:id**="CHG-4">Addition of another stanza in a different hand,        probably at a later stage</**change**>   </**listChange**>  </**creation**> </**profileDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="1">   <elementRef key="listChange"/>   <elementRef key="change"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listChange {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute ordered { text }?,  ( [tei\_listChange](#TEI.tei_listChange) | [tei\_change](#TEI.tei_change) )+ } |

## <listPrefixDef>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listPrefixDef>** (list of prefix definitions) contains a list of definitions of prefixing schemes used in data.pointer values, showing how abbreviated URIs using each scheme may be expanded into full URIs. [[16.2.3. Using Abbreviated Pointers](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAPU)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc listPrefixDef |
| **May contain** | **header:** listPrefixDef prefixDef |
| **Example** | In this example, two private URI scheme prefixes are defined and patterns are provided for dereferencing them. Each prefix is also supplied with a human-readable explanation in a <p> element.  <**listPrefixDef**>  <**prefixDef** **ident**="psn"   **matchPattern**="([A-Z]+)"   **replacementPattern**="personography.xml#$1">   <**p**> Private URIs using the <**code**>psn</**code**>       prefix are pointers to <**gi**>person</**gi**>       elements in the personography.xml file.      For example, <**code**>psn:MDH</**code**>       dereferences to <**code**>personography.xml#MDH</**code**>.   </**p**>  </**prefixDef**>  <**prefixDef** **ident**="bibl"   **matchPattern**="([a-z]+[a-z0-9]\*)"   **replacementPattern**="http://www.example.com/getBibl.xql?id=$1">   <**p**> Private URIs using the <**code**>bibl</**code**> prefix can be      expanded to form URIs which retrieve the relevant      bibliographical reference from www.example.com.   </**p**>  </**prefixDef**> </**listPrefixDef**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="1">   <elementRef key="prefixDef"/>   <elementRef key="listPrefixDef"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listPrefixDef {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  ( [tei\_prefixDef](#TEI.tei_prefixDef) | [tei\_listPrefixDef](#TEI.tei_listPrefixDef) )+ } |

## <localName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<localName>** (locally-defined property name) contains a locally defined name for some property. [[5.2.1. Character Properties](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/WD.html#ucsprops)] | |
| **Module** | gaiji |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **gaiji:** charProp |
| **May contain** | Character data only |
| **Note** | No definitive list of local names is proposed. However, the name entity is recommended as a means of naming the property identifying the recommended character entity name for this character or glyph. |
| **Example** | <**localName**>daikanwa</**localName**> <**localName**>entity</**localName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element localName { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), text } |

## <locale>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<locale>** contains a brief informal description of the kind of place concerned, for example: a room, a restaurant, a park bench, etc. [[15.2.3. The Setting Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHSE)] | |
| **Module** | corpus |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.settingPart |
| **Contained by** | **corpus:** setting |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**locale**>a fashionable restaurant</**locale**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element locale { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited) } |

## <m>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<m>** (morpheme) represents a grammatical morpheme. [[17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILC)] | |
| **Module** | analysis |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **baseForm** | supplies the morpheme's base form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.word](#teidata.word) | | |
| **Member of** | model.segLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl m phr s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **header:** change distributor edition extent geoDecl licence  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c m span spanGrp  **core:** cb gap hi index lb milestone note pb  **gaiji:** g  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | The *@type* attribute may be used to indicate the type of morpheme, taking values such as clitic, prefix, stem, etc. as appropriate. |
| **Example** | <**w** **type**="adjective">  <**w** **type**="noun">   <**m** **baseForm**="con" **type**="prefix">com</**m**>   <**m** **type**="root">fort</**m**>  </**w**>  <**m** **type**="suffix">able</**m**> </**w**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.hiLike"/>   <elementRef key="seg"/>   <elementRef key="m"/>   <elementRef key="c"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element m {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.segLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.segLike),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute baseForm { text }?,  (  text  | [tei\_model.gLike](#TEI.tei_model.gLike) | [tei\_model.hiLike](#TEI.tei_model.hiLike) | [tei\_seg](#TEI.tei_seg) | [tei\_m](#TEI.tei_m) | [tei\_c](#TEI.tei_c) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\* } |

## <mapping>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<mapping>** (character mapping) contains one or more characters which are related to the parent character or glyph in some respect, as specified by the *@type* attribute. [[5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/WD.html#D25-20)] | |
| **Module** | gaiji |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Contained by** | **gaiji:** char glyph |
| **May contain** | **gaiji:** g  character data |
| **Note** | Suggested values for the *@type* attribute include exact for exact equivalences, uppercase for uppercase equivalences, lowercase for lowercase equivalences, and simplified for simplified characters. The <g> elements contained by this element can point to either another <char> or <glyph>element or contain a character that is intended to be the target of this mapping. |
| **Example** | <**mapping** **type**="modern">r</**mapping**> <**mapping** **type**="standard">人</**mapping**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element mapping {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_macro.xtext](#TEI.tei_macro.xtext)} |

## <measure>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<measure>** contains a word or phrase referring to some quantity of an object or commodity, usually comprising a number, a unit, and a commodity name. [[3.5.3. Numbers and Measures](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONANU)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.measurement (@unit, @quantity, @commodity)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | specifies the type of measurement in any convenient typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | |
| **Member of** | model.measureLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s span  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure measureGrp meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**measure** **type**="weight">  <**num**>2</**num**> pounds of flesh </**measure**> <**measure** **type**="currency">£10-11-6d</**measure**> <**measure** **type**="area">2 merks of old extent</**measure**> |
| **Example** | <**measure** **commodity**="rum" **quantity**="40"  **unit**="hogshead">2 score hh rum</**measure**> <**measure** **commodity**="roses" **quantity**="12"  **unit**="count">1 doz. roses</**measure**> <**measure** **commodity**="tulips" **quantity**="1"  **unit**="count">a yellow tulip</**measure**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element measure {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.measurement.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.measurement),  attribute type { text }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <measureGrp>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<measureGrp>** (measure group) contains a group of dimensional specifications which relate to the same object, for example the height and width of a manuscript page. [[10.3.4. Dimensions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/MS.html#msdim)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.measurement (@unit, @quantity, @commodity) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.measureLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s span  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure measureGrp meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** measure measureGrp num  **gaiji:** g  character data |
| **Example** | <**measureGrp** **type**="leaves" **unit**="mm">  <**height** **scope**="range">157-160</**height**>  <**width** **quantity**="105"/> </**measureGrp**> <**measureGrp** **type**="ruledArea" **unit**="mm">  <**height** **quantity**="90" **scope**="most"/>  <**width** **quantity**="48" **scope**="most"/> </**measureGrp**> <**measureGrp** **type**="box" **unit**="in">  <**height** **quantity**="12"/>  <**width** **quantity**="10"/>  <**depth** **quantity**="6"/> </**measureGrp**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.measureLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element measureGrp {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.measurement.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.measurement),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  ( text | [tei\_model.gLike](#TEI.tei_model.gLike) | [tei\_model.measureLike](#TEI.tei_model.measureLike) )\* } |

## <media>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<media>** indicates the location of any form of external media such as an audio or video clip etc. [[3.9. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COGR)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.resourced (@url) att.declaring (@decls) att.timed (@start, @end) att.media (@width, @height, @scale)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **mimeType** | (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.internetMedia | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.word](#teidata.word) separated by whitespace | | |
| **Member of** | model.graphicLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **gaiji:** char glyph  **header:** change distributor edition extent geoDecl licence  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc |
| **Note** | The attributes available for this element are not appropriate in all cases. For example, it makes no sense to specify the temporal duration of a graphic. Such errors are not currently detected.  The *@mimeType* attribute must be used to specify the MIME media type of the resource specified by the *@url* attribute. |
| **Example** | <**figure**>  <**media** **mimeType**="image/png" **url**="fig1.png"/>  <**head**>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</**head**>  <**figDesc**>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground, and a    series of buoys strung out between them.</**figDesc**> </**figure**> |
| **Example** | <**media** **dur**="PT10S" **mimeType**="audio/wav"  **url**="dingDong.wav">  <**desc**>Ten seconds of bellringing sound</**desc**> </**media**> |
| **Example** | <**media** **dur**="PT45M" **mimeType**="video/mp4"  **url**="clip45.mp4" **width**="500px">  <**desc**>A 45 minute video clip to be displayed in a window 500    px wide</**desc**> </**media**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.descLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element media {  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.media.attribute.width](#TEI.tei_att.media),  [tei\_att.media.attribute.height](#TEI.tei_att.media),  [tei\_att.media.attribute.scale](#TEI.tei_att.media),  [tei\_att.resourced.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.resourced),  [tei\_att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declaring),  [tei\_att.timed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.timed),  attribute mimeType { list { + } },  [tei\_model.descLike](#TEI.tei_model.descLike)\* } |

## <meeting>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<meeting>** contains the formalized descriptive title for a meeting or conference, for use in a bibliographic description for an item derived from such a meeting, or as a heading or preamble to publications emanating from it. [[3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.divWrapper model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl lg list monogr  **header:** editionStmt titleStmt  **textstructure:** body div front group |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title  **header:** biblFull idno  character data |
| **Example** | <**div**>  <**meeting**>Ninth International Conference on Middle High German Textual Criticism, Aachen,    June 1998.</**meeting**>  <**list** **type**="attendance">   <**head**>List of Participants</**head**>   <**item**>    <**persName**>...</**persName**>   </**item**>   <**item**>    <**persName**>...</**persName**>   </**item**> <!--...-->  </**list**>  <**p**>...</**p**> </**div**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element meeting {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.canonical),  [tei\_macro.limitedContent](#TEI.tei_macro.limitedContent)} |

## <mentioned>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<mentioned>** marks words or phrases mentioned, not used. [[3.3.3. Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s span  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | There is thus a  striking accentual difference between a verbal form like <**mentioned** **xml:id**="X234" **xml:lang**="el">eluthemen</**mentioned**> <**gloss** **target**="#X234">we were released,</**gloss**> accented on the second syllable of the  word, and its participial derivative  <**mentioned** **xml:id**="X235" **xml:lang**="el">lutheis</**mentioned**> <**gloss** **target**="#X235">released,</**gloss**> accented on the last. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element mentioned { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq) } |

## <milestone>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<milestone>** marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element. [[3.10.3. Milestone Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.milestoneUnit (@unit) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break) |
| **Member of** | model.milestoneLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl m phr s span w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | For this element, the global *@n* attribute indicates the new number or other value for the unit which changes at this milestone. The special value unnumbered should be used in passages which fall outside the normal numbering scheme, such as chapter or other headings, poem numbers or titles, etc.  The order in which <milestone> elements are given at a given point is not normally significant. |
| **Example** | <**milestone** **ed**="La" **n**="23" **unit**="Dreissiger"/>  ... <**milestone** **ed**="AV" **n**="24" **unit**="verse"/> ... |
| **Content model** | <content> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element milestone {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.milestoneUnit.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.milestoneUnit),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.edition.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.edition),  [tei\_att.spanning.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.spanning),  [tei\_att.breaking.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.breaking),  empty } |

## <monogr>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<monogr>** (monographic level) contains bibliographic elements describing an item (e.g. a book or journal) published as an independent item (i.e. as a separate physical object). [[3.11.2.1. Analytic, Monographic, and Series Levels](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOL)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** biblStruct |
| **May contain** | **core:** author biblScope editor imprint meeting note ptr ref respStmt textLang title  **header:** authority availability edition extent funder idno sponsor |
| **Note** | May contain specialized bibliographic elements, in a prescribed order.  The <monogr> element may only occur only within a <biblStruct>, where its use is mandatory for the description of a monographic-level bibliographic item. |
| **Example** | <**biblStruct**>  <**analytic**>   <**author**>Chesnutt, David</**author**>   <**title**>Historical Editions in the States</**title**>  </**analytic**>  <**monogr**>   <**title** **level**="j">Computers and the Humanities</**title**>   <**imprint**>    <**date** **when**="1991-12">(December, 1991):</**date**>   </**imprint**>   <**biblScope**>25.6</**biblScope**>   <**biblScope** **from**="377" **to**="380" **unit**="page">377–380</**biblScope**>  </**monogr**> </**biblStruct**> |
| **Example** | <**biblStruct** **type**="book">  <**monogr**>   <**author**>    <**persName**>     <**forename**>Leo Joachim</**forename**>     <**surname**>Frachtenberg</**surname**>    </**persName**>   </**author**>   <**title** **level**="m" **type**="main">Lower Umpqua Texts</**title**>   <**imprint**>    <**pubPlace**>New York</**pubPlace**>    <**publisher**>Columbia University Press</**publisher**>    <**date**>1914</**date**>   </**imprint**>  </**monogr**>  <**series**>   <**title** **level**="s" **type**="main">Columbia University Contributions to      Anthropology</**title**>   <**biblScope** **unit**="volume">4</**biblScope**>  </**series**> </**biblStruct**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate minOccurs="0">    <sequence>     <alternate>      <elementRef key="author"/>      <elementRef key="editor"/>      <elementRef key="meeting"/>      <elementRef key="respStmt"/>     </alternate>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <elementRef key="author"/>      <elementRef key="editor"/>      <elementRef key="meeting"/>      <elementRef key="respStmt"/>     </alternate>     <elementRef key="title"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>      <elementRef key="idno"/>      <elementRef key="textLang"/>      <elementRef key="editor"/>      <elementRef key="respStmt"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>    <sequence>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="1">      <elementRef key="title"/>      <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>      <elementRef key="idno"/>     </alternate>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <elementRef key="textLang"/>      <elementRef key="author"/>      <elementRef key="editor"/>      <elementRef key="meeting"/>      <elementRef key="respStmt"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>    <sequence>     <elementRef key="authority"/>     <elementRef key="idno"/>    </sequence>   </alternate>   <elementRef key="availability"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.noteLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="edition"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <elementRef key="idno"/>     <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>     <elementRef key="editor"/>     <elementRef key="sponsor"/>     <elementRef key="funder"/>     <elementRef key="respStmt"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>   <elementRef key="imprint"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="imprint"/>    <elementRef key="extent"/>    <elementRef key="biblScope"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element monogr {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  (  (  (  ( [tei\_author](#TEI.tei_author) | [tei\_editor](#TEI.tei_editor) | [tei\_meeting](#TEI.tei_meeting) | [tei\_respStmt](#TEI.tei_respStmt) ),  ( [tei\_author](#TEI.tei_author) | [tei\_editor](#TEI.tei_editor) | [tei\_meeting](#TEI.tei_meeting) | [tei\_respStmt](#TEI.tei_respStmt) )\*,  [tei\_title](#TEI.tei_title)+,  (  [tei\_model.ptrLike](#TEI.tei_model.ptrLike) | [tei\_idno](#TEI.tei_idno) | [tei\_textLang](#TEI.tei_textLang) | [tei\_editor](#TEI.tei_editor) | [tei\_respStmt](#TEI.tei_respStmt) )\*  )  | (  ( [tei\_title](#TEI.tei_title) | [tei\_model.ptrLike](#TEI.tei_model.ptrLike) | [tei\_idno](#TEI.tei_idno) )+,  (  [tei\_textLang](#TEI.tei_textLang) | [tei\_author](#TEI.tei_author) | [tei\_editor](#TEI.tei_editor) | [tei\_meeting](#TEI.tei_meeting) | [tei\_respStmt](#TEI.tei_respStmt) )\*  )  | ( [tei\_authority](#TEI.tei_authority), [tei\_idno](#TEI.tei_idno) )  )?,  [tei\_availability](#TEI.tei_availability)\*,  [tei\_model.noteLike](#TEI.tei_model.noteLike)\*,  (  [tei\_edition](#TEI.tei_edition),  (  [tei\_idno](#TEI.tei_idno) | [tei\_model.ptrLike](#TEI.tei_model.ptrLike) | [tei\_editor](#TEI.tei_editor) | [tei\_sponsor](#TEI.tei_sponsor) | [tei\_funder](#TEI.tei_funder) | [tei\_respStmt](#TEI.tei_respStmt) )\*  )\*,  [tei\_imprint](#TEI.tei_imprint),  ( [tei\_imprint](#TEI.tei_imprint) | [tei\_extent](#TEI.tei_extent) | [tei\_biblScope](#TEI.tei_biblScope) )\*  ) } |

## <name>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<name>** (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. [[3.5.1. Referring Strings](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONARS)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike.agent |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s span  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp respStmt rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose setting  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with <persName>, <placeName>, or <orgName>, when the TEI module for names and dates is included. |
| **Example** | <**name** **type**="person">Thomas Hoccleve</**name**> <**name** **type**="place">Villingaholt</**name**> <**name** **type**="org">Vetus Latina Institut</**name**> <**name** **ref**="#HOC001" **type**="person">Occleve</**name**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element name {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.personal.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.personal),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <namespace>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<namespace>** supplies the formal name of the namespace to which the elements documented by its children belong. [[2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD57)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **name** | specifies the full formal name of the namespace concerned.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [teidata.namespace](#teidata.namespace) | | |
| **Contained by** | **header:** tagsDecl |
| **May contain** | **header:** tagUsage |
| **Example** | <**namespace** **name**="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  <**tagUsage** **gi**="hi" **occurs**="28" **withId**="2"> Used only to mark English words    italicized in the copy text </**tagUsage**> </**namespace**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <elementRef key="tagUsage"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element namespace {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute name { text },  [tei\_tagUsage](#TEI.tei_tagUsage)+ } |

## <normalization>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<normalization>** indicates the extent of normalization or regularization of the original source carried out in converting it to electronic form. [[2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD53) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **method** | indicates the method adopted to indicate normalizations within the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **silent** normalization made silently [Default]  **markup** normalization represented using markup | | |
| **Member of** | model.editorialDeclPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** editorialDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab |
| **Example** | <**editorialDecl**>  <**normalization** **method**="markup">   <**p**>Where both upper- and lower-case i, j, u, v, and vv have been normalized, to modern      20th century typographical practice, the <**gi**>choice</**gi**> element has been used to      enclose <**gi**>orig</**gi**> and <**gi**>reg</**gi**> elements giving the original and new values      respectively. ... </**p**>  </**normalization**>  <**normalization** **method**="silent">   <**p**>Spacing between words and following punctuation has been regularized to zero spaces;      spacing between words has been regularized to one space.</**p**>  </**normalization**>  <**normalization** **source**="http://www.dict.sztaki.hu/webster">   <**p**>Spelling converted throughout to Modern American usage, based on Websters 9th      Collegiate dictionary.</**p**>  </**normalization**> </**editorialDecl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.pLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element normalization {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  attribute method { "silent" | "markup" }?,  [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+ } |

## <note>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<note>** contains a note or annotation. [[3.8.1. Notes and Simple Annotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONONO) [2.2.6. The Notes Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD27) [3.11.2.8. Notes and Statement of Language](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICON) [9.3.5.4. Notes within Entries](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DI.html#DITPNO)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.placement (@place) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **anchored** | indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.truthValue](#teidata.truthValue) | | **Default** | true | | **Note** | In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. ‘page 218, lines 3–4’). The *@anchored* attribute indicates whether any explicit location is given, whether by symbol or by prose cross-reference. The value true indicates that such an explicit location is indicated in the copy text; the value false indicates that the copy text does not indicate a specific place of attachment for the note. If the specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the *@n* attribute. | | | **targetEnd** | points to the end of the span to which the note is attached, if the note is not embedded in the text at that point.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | **Note** | This attribute is retained for backwards compatibility; it may be removed at a subsequent release of the Guidelines. The recommended way of pointing to a span of elements is by means of the range function of XPointer, as further described in [16.2.4.6. range()](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SATSRN). | | |
| **Member of** | model.correspActionPart model.correspContextPart model.correspDescPart model.noteLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl m phr s span w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope biblStruct cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned monogr name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp respStmt rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **gaiji:** char glyph  **header:** authority change classCode correspAction correspContext correspDesc distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence notesStmt principal sponsor  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":  And yet it is not only  in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the  painterly <**note** **place**="bottom" **resp**="#MDMH"  **type**="gloss">  <**term** **xml:lang**="de">Malerisch</**term**>. This word has, in the German, two  distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object,  the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid  confusion, they have been distinguished in English as <**mentioned**>picturesque</**mentioned**> and <**mentioned**>painterly</**mentioned**> respectively. </**note**> style of the  Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this  psychological significance.  <!-- elsewhere in the document --> <**respStmt** **xml:id**="MDMH">  <**resp**>translation from German to English</**resp**>  <**name**>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie</**name**> </**respStmt**>  For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header. |
| **Example** | The global *@n* attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:  Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the  family during the second half of the eleventh century, <**note** **anchored**="true" **n**="126"> The  alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact, a reference to  Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </**note**> is well known from Geniza documents  published by Jacob Mann.  However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element note {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.placement.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.placement),  [tei\_att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.pointing),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.written.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.written),  attribute anchored { text }?,  attribute targetEnd { list { + } }?,  [tei\_macro.specialPara](#TEI.tei_macro.specialPara)} |

## <notesStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<notesStmt>** (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description. [[2.2.6. The Notes Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD27) [2.2. The File Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** biblFull fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** note relatedItem |
| **Note** | Information of different kinds should not be grouped together into the same note. |
| **Example** | <**notesStmt**>  <**note**>Historical commentary provided by Mark Cohen</**note**>  <**note**>OCR scanning done at University of Toronto</**note**> </**notesStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="1">   <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>   <elementRef key="relatedItem"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element notesStmt {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  ( [tei\_model.noteLike](#TEI.tei_model.noteLike) | [tei\_relatedItem](#TEI.tei_relatedItem) )+ } |

## <num>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<num>** (number) contains a number, written in any form. [[3.5.3. Numbers and Measures](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONANU)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | indicates the type of numeric value.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Suggested values include:** | **cardinal** absolute number, e.g. 21, 21.5  **ordinal** ordinal number, e.g. 21st  **fraction** fraction, e.g. one half or three-quarters  **percentage** a percentage | | **Note** | If a different typology is desired, other values can be used for this attribute. | | | **value** | supplies the value of the number in standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.numeric](#teidata.numeric) | | **Values** | a numeric value. | | **Note** | The standard form used is defined by the TEI datatype data.numeric. | | |
| **Member of** | model.measureLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s span  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure measureGrp meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | Detailed analyses of quantities and units of measure in historical documents may also use the feature structure mechanism described in chapter [18. Feature Structures](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FS). The <num> element is intended for use in simple applications. |
| **Example** | <**p**>I reached <**num** **type**="cardinal" **value**="21">twenty-one</**num**> on  my <**num** **type**="ordinal" **value**="21">twenty-first</**num**> birthday</**p**> <**p**>Light travels at <**num** **value**="3E10">3×10<**hi** **rend**="sup">10</**hi**>  </**num**> cm per second.</**p**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element num {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.ranging.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.ranging),  attribute type { "cardinal" | "ordinal" | "fraction" | "percentage" }?,  attribute value { text }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <numeric>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<numeric>** (numeric value) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which contains a numeric value or range. [[18.3. Other Atomic Feature Values](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FSSY)] | |
| **Module** | iso-fs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **value** | supplies a lower bound for the numeric value represented, and also (if *@max* is not supplied) its upper bound.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [teidata.numeric](#teidata.numeric) | | | **max** | supplies an upper bound for the numeric value represented.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.numeric](#teidata.numeric) | | | **trunc** | specifies whether the value represented should be truncated to give an integer value.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.truthValue](#teidata.truthValue) | | |
| **Member of** | model.featureVal.single |
| **Contained by** | **iso-fs:** f fvLib vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vRange |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | It is an error to supply the *@max* attribute in the absence of a value for the *@value* attribute. |
| **Example** | <**numeric** **value**="42"/>  This represents the numeric value 42. |
| **Example** | <**numeric** **max**="50" **trunc**="true" **value**="42.45"/>  This represents any of the nine possible integer values between 42 and 50 inclusive. If the *@trunc* attribute had the value FALSE, this example would represent any of the infinite number of numeric values between 42.45 and 50.0 |
| **Content model** | <content> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element numeric {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datcat.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datcat),  attribute value { text },  attribute max { text }?,  attribute trunc { text }?,  empty } |

## <opener>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<opener>** groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter. [[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.divTopPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **textstructure:** body div group postscript |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **textstructure:** byline dateline salute signed  character data |
| **Example** | <**opener**>  <**dateline**>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</**dateline**> </**opener**> |
| **Example** | <**opener**>  <**dateline**>   <**name** **type**="place">Great Marlborough Street</**name**>   <**date**>November 11, 1848</**date**>  </**dateline**>  <**salute**>My dear Sir,</**salute**> </**opener**> <**p**>I am sorry to say that absence from town and other circumstances have prevented me from  earlier enquiring...</**p**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <elementRef key="argument"/>   <elementRef key="byline"/>   <elementRef key="dateline"/>   <elementRef key="epigraph"/>   <elementRef key="salute"/>   <elementRef key="signed"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element opener {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.written.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.written),  (  text  | [tei\_model.gLike](#TEI.tei_model.gLike) | [tei\_model.phrase](#TEI.tei_model.phrase) | [argument](#TEI.argument) | [tei\_byline](#TEI.tei_byline) | [tei\_dateline](#TEI.tei_dateline) | [epigraph](#TEI.epigraph) | [tei\_salute](#TEI.tei_salute) | [tei\_signed](#TEI.tei_signed) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\* } |

## <orig>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<orig>** (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected. [[3.4.2. Regularization and Normalization](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDREG) [12. Critical Apparatus](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TC.html#TC)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl pc phr s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **header:** change distributor edition extent geoDecl licence  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | If all that is desired is to call attention to the original version in the copy text, <orig> may be used alone:  <**l**>But this will be a <**orig**>meere</**orig**> confusion</**l**> <**l**>And hardly shall we all be <**orig**>vnderstoode</**orig**> </**l**> |
| **Example** | More usually, an <orig> will be combined with a regularized form within a <choice> element:  <**l**>But this will be a <**choice**>   <**orig**>meere</**orig**>   <**reg**>mere</**reg**>  </**choice**> confusion</**l**> <**l**>And hardly shall we all be <**choice**>   <**orig**>vnderstoode</**orig**>   <**reg**>understood</**reg**>  </**choice**> </**l**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element orig { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_macro.paraContent](#TEI.tei_macro.paraContent) } |

## <p>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<p>** (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [[3.1. Paragraphs](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COPA) [7.2.5. Speech Contents](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.fragmentable (@part) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.pLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** item note q quote said sp stage  **corpus:** particDesc setting settingDesc  **header:** abstract application availability cRefPattern calendar change correction correspAction correspContext correspDesc editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc hyphenation interpretation langUsage licence normalization prefixDef projectDesc publicationStmt punctuation quotation refsDecl samplingDecl segmentation seriesStmt sourceDesc stdVals styleDefDecl  **textstructure:** back body div front postscript |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**p**>Hallgerd was outside. <**q**>There is blood on your axe,</**q**> she said. <**q**>What have you    done?</**q**> </**p**> <**p**>  <**q**>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</**q**> replied Thjostolf. </**p**> <**p**>  <**q**>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</**q**> she said. </**p**> <**p**>  <**q**>Yes,</**q**> said Thjostolf. <**q**>And now you must think up some plan for me.</**q**> </**p**> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="not(ancestor::floatingText) and (ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(parent::tei:exemplum |parent::tei:item |parent::tei:note |parent::tei:q |parent::tei:quote |parent::tei:remarks |parent::tei:said |parent::tei:sp |parent::tei:stage |parent::tei:cell |parent::tei:figure )"> Abstract model violation: Paragraphs may not contain other paragraphs or ab elements. </s:report> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:p[. = current()])]"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, p, or ab. </s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element p {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declaring),  [tei\_att.fragmentable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.fragmentable),  [tei\_att.written.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.written),  [tei\_macro.paraContent](#TEI.tei_macro.paraContent)} |

## <particDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<particDesc>** (participation description) describes the identifiable speakers, voices, or other participants in any kind of text or other persons named or otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [[15.2. Contextual Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAH)] | |
| **Module** | corpus |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.profileDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** profileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab |
| **Note** | May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a structured list of persons and person groups, with an optional formal specification of any relationships amongst them. |
| **Example** | <**particDesc**>  <**listPerson**>   <**person** **age**="mid" **sex**="2" **xml:id**="P-1234">    <**p**>Female informant, well-educated, born in        Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation. Speaks French fluently.        Socio-Economic status B2.</**p**>   </**person**>   <**person** **sex**="1" **xml:id**="P-4332">    <**persName**>     <**surname**>Hancock</**surname**>     <**forename**>Antony</**forename**>     <**forename**>Aloysius</**forename**>     <**forename**>St John</**forename**>    </**persName**>    <**residence** **notAfter**="1959">     <**address**>      <**street**>Railway Cuttings</**street**>      <**settlement**>East Cheam</**settlement**>     </**address**>    </**residence**>    <**occupation**>comedian</**occupation**>   </**person**>   <**listRelation**>    <**relation** **mutual**="#P-1234 #P-4332"     **name**="spouse" **type**="personal"/>   </**listRelation**>  </**listPerson**> </**particDesc**>  This example shows both a very simple person description, and a very detailed one, using some of the more specialized elements from the module for Names and Dates. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.personLike"/>    <elementRef key="listPerson"/>    <elementRef key="listOrg"/>   </alternate>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element particDesc {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  ( [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+ | ( [tei\_model.personLike](#TEI.tei_model.personLike) | [listPerson](#TEI.listPerson) | [listOrg](#TEI.listOrg) )+ ) } |

## <pb>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<pb>** (page beginning) marks the beginning of a new page in a paginated document. [[3.10.3. Milestone Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break) |
| **Member of** | model.milestoneLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl m phr s span w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | A <pb> element should appear at the start of the page which it identifies. The global *@n* attribute indicates the number or other value associated with this page. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the <pb> element itself.  The *@type* attribute may be used to characterize the page break in any respect. The more specialized attributes *@break*, *@ed*, or *@edRef* should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the page break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives. |
| **Example** | Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.  <**p**> ... <**pb** **ed**="ed2" **n**="145"/> <!-- Page 145 in edition "ed2" starts here --> ... <**pb** **ed**="ed1" **n**="283"/> <!-- Page 283 in edition "ed1" starts here--> ... </**p**> |
| **Example** | A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the *@facs* attribute  <**body**>  <**pb** **facs**="page1.png" **n**="1"/> <!-- page1.png contains an image of the page; the text it contains is encoded here -->  <**p**> <!-- ... -->  </**p**>  <**pb** **facs**="page2.png" **n**="2"/> <!-- similarly, for page 2 -->  <**p**> <!-- ... -->  </**p**> </**body**> |
| **Content model** | <content> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element pb {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.edition.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.edition),  [tei\_att.spanning.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.spanning),  [tei\_att.breaking.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.breaking),  empty } |

## <pc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<pc>** (punctuation character) contains a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark. [[17.1.2. Below the Word Level](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AIPC)] | |
| **Module** | analysis |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **force** | indicates the extent to which this punctuation mark conventionally separates words or phrases   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **strong** the punctuation mark is a word separator  **weak** the punctuation mark is not a word separator  **inter** the punctuation mark may or may not be a word separator | | | **unit** | provides a name for the kind of unit delimited by this punctuation mark.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | | **pre** | indicates whether this punctuation mark precedes or follows the unit it delimits.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.truthValue](#teidata.truthValue) | | |
| **Member of** | model.segLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **header:** change distributor edition extent geoDecl licence  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c  **core:** abbr add choice corr del expan orig reg sic unclear  **gaiji:** g  character data |
| **Example** | <**phr**>  <**w**>do</**w**>  <**w**>you</**w**>  <**w**>understand</**w**>  <**pc** **type**="interrogative">?</**pc**> </**phr**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <elementRef key="c"/>   <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element pc {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.segLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.segLike),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute force { "strong" | "weak" | "inter" }?,  attribute unit { text }?,  attribute pre { text }?,  ( text | [tei\_model.gLike](#TEI.tei_model.gLike) | [tei\_c](#TEI.tei_c) | [tei\_model.pPart.edit](#TEI.tei_model.pPart.edit) )\* } |

## <phr>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<phr>** (phrase) represents a grammatical phrase. [[17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILC)] | |
| **Module** | analysis |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.segLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **header:** change distributor edition extent geoDecl licence  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | The *@type* attribute may be used to indicate the type of phrase, taking values such as noun, verb, preposition, etc. as appropriate. |
| **Example** | <**phr** **function**="extraposted\_modifier"  **type**="verb">To talk <**phr** **function**="complement"   **type**="preposition">of  <**phr** **function**="object" **type**="noun">many things</**phr**>  </**phr**> </**phr**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element phr {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.segLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.segLike),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <postBox>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<postBox>** (postal box or post office box) contains a number or other identifier for some postal delivery point other than a street address. [[3.5.2. Addresses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAD)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.addrPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address |
| **May contain** | Character data only |
| **Note** | The position and nature of postal codes is highly country-specific; the conventions appropriate to the country concerned should be used. |
| **Example** | <**postBox**>P.O. Box 280</**postBox**> |
| **Example** | <**postBox**>Postbus 532</**postBox**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element postBox { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), text } |

## <postCode>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<postCode>** (postal code) contains a numerical or alphanumeric code used as part of a postal address to simplify sorting or delivery of mail. [[3.5.2. Addresses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAD)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.addrPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address |
| **May contain** | Character data only |
| **Note** | The position and nature of postal codes is highly country-specific; the conventions appropriate to the country concerned should be used. |
| **Example** | <**postCode**>HR1 3LR</**postCode**> |
| **Example** | <**postCode**>60142-7</**postCode**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element postCode { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), text } |

## <postscript>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<postscript>** contains a postscript, e.g. to a letter. [[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.divBottomPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **textstructure:** back body div front group postscript |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** bibl biblStruct cb cit desc gap head index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage  **header:** biblFull  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  **textstructure:** closer opener postscript signed trailer |
| **Example** | <**div** **type**="letter">  <**opener**>   <**dateline**>    <**placeName**>Rimaone</**placeName**>    <**date** **when**="2006-11-21">21 Nov 06</**date**>   </**dateline**>   <**salute**>Dear Susan,</**salute**>  </**opener**>  <**p**>Thank you very much for the assistance splitting those    logs. I'm sorry about the misunderstanding as to the size of    the task. I really was not asking for help, only to borrow the    axe. Hope you had fun in any case.</**p**>  <**closer**>   <**salute**>Sincerely yours,</**salute**>   <**signed**>Seymour</**signed**>  </**closer**>  <**postscript**>   <**label**>P.S.</**label**>   <**p**>The collision occured on <**date** **when**="2001-07-06">06 Jul 01</**date**>.</**p**>  </**postscript**> </**div**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.global"/>    <classRef key="model.divTopPart"/>   </alternate>   <classRef key="model.common"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.global"/>    <classRef key="model.common"/>   </alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element postscript {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.written.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.written),  (  ( [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) | [tei\_model.divTopPart](#TEI.tei_model.divTopPart) )\*,  [tei\_model.common](#TEI.tei_model.common),  ( [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) | [tei\_model.common](#TEI.tei_model.common) )\*,  ( [tei\_model.divBottomPart](#TEI.tei_model.divBottomPart), [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\* )\*  ) } |

## <prefixDef>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<prefixDef>** (prefix definition) defines a prefixing scheme used in data.pointer values, showing how abbreviated URIs using the scheme may be expanded into full URIs. [[16.2.3. Using Abbreviated Pointers](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAPU)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.patternReplacement (@matchPattern, @replacementPattern)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **ident** | supplies a name which functions as the prefix for an abbreviated pointing scheme such as a private URI scheme. The prefix constitutes the text preceding the first colon.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [teidata.prefix](#teidata.prefix) | | **Note** | The value is limited to teidata.prefix so that it may be mapped directly to a URI prefix. | | |
| **Contained by** | **header:** listPrefixDef |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab |
| **Note** | The abbreviated pointer may be dereferenced to produce either an absolute or a relative URI reference. In the latter case it is combined with the value of *@xml:base* in force at the place where the pointing attribute occurs to form an absolute URI in the usual manner as prescribed by [XML Base](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlbase/). |
| **Example** | <**prefixDef** **ident**="ref"  **matchPattern**="([a-z]+)"  **replacementPattern**="../../references/references.xml#$1">  <**p**> In the context of this project, private URIs with    the prefix "ref" point to <**gi**>div</**gi**> elements in    the project's global references.xml file.  </**p**> </**prefixDef**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.pLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element prefixDef {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.patternReplacement.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.patternReplacement),  attribute ident { text },  [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)\* } |

## <preparedness>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<preparedness>** describes the extent to which a text may be regarded as prepared or spontaneous. [[15.2.1. The Text Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHTD)] | |
| **Module** | corpus |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | a keyword characterizing the type of preparedness.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Sample values include:** | **none** spontaneous or unprepared  **scripted** follows a script  **formulaic** follows a predefined set of conventions  **revised** polished or revised before presentation | | |
| **Member of** | model.textDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **corpus:** textDesc |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**preparedness** **type**="none"/> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element preparedness {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute type { text }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

## <principal>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<principal>** (principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text. [[2.2.1. The Title Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **header:** editionStmt titleStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**principal** **ref**="http://viaf.org/viaf/105517912">Gary Taylor</**principal**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element principal {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.canonical),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

## <profileDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<profileDesc>** (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. [[2.4. The Profile Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4) [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.teiHeaderPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** biblFull teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **corpus:** particDesc settingDesc textDesc  **header:** abstract calendarDesc correspDesc creation langUsage textClass |
| **Note** | Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of <profileDesc> unless these are documenting multiple texts. |
| **Example** | <**profileDesc**>  <**langUsage**>   <**language** **ident**="fr">French</**language**>  </**langUsage**>  <**textDesc** **n**="novel">   <**channel** **mode**="w">print; part issues</**channel**>   <**constitution** **type**="single"/>   <**derivation** **type**="original"/>   <**domain** **type**="art"/>   <**factuality** **type**="fiction"/>   <**interaction** **type**="none"/>   <**preparedness** **type**="prepared"/>   <**purpose** **degree**="high" **type**="entertain"/>   <**purpose** **degree**="medium" **type**="inform"/>  </**textDesc**>  <**settingDesc**>   <**setting**>    <**name**>Paris, France</**name**>    <**time**>Late 19th century</**time**>   </**setting**>  </**settingDesc**> </**profileDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.profileDescPart"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element profileDesc { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_model.profileDescPart](#TEI.tei_model.profileDescPart)\* } |

## <projectDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<projectDesc>** (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected. [[2.3.1. The Project Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD51) [2.3. The Encoding Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab |
| **Example** | <**projectDesc**>  <**p**>Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990</**p**> </**projectDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.pLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element projectDesc {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+ } |

## <ptr>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<ptr>** (pointer) defines a pointer to another location. [[3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COXR) [16.1. Links](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAPT)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.internetMedia (@mimeType) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) att.cReferencing (@cRef) |
| **Member of** | model.ptrLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s span  **core:** abbr add addrLine analytic author bibl biblScope biblStruct cit citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned monogr name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg relatedItem resp rs said series sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** application authority catDesc change classCode correspContext creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal publicationStmt rendition sponsor tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab altGrp joinGrp linkGrp seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Example** | <**ptr** **target**="#p143 #p144"/> <**ptr** **target**="http://www.tei-c.org"/> <**ptr** **cRef**="1.3.4"/> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target and @cRef may be supplied on <s:name/>.</s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element ptr {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.pointing),  [tei\_att.internetMedia.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.internetMedia),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declaring),  [tei\_att.cReferencing.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.cReferencing),  empty } |

## <pubPlace>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<pubPlace>** (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [[3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) |
| **Member of** | model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl imprint  **header:** publicationStmt  **textstructure:** docImprint |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**publicationStmt**>  <**publisher**>Oxford University Press</**publisher**>  <**pubPlace**>Oxford</**pubPlace**>  <**date**>1989</**date**> </**publicationStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element pubPlace {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <publicationStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<publicationStmt>** (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24) [2.2. The File Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** biblFull fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date p ptr pubPlace publisher ref  **header:** authority availability distributor idno  **linking:** ab |
| **Note** | Where a publication statement contains several members of the model.publicationStmtPart.agency or model.publicationStmtPart.detail classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order. |
| **Example** | <**publicationStmt**>  <**publisher**>C. Muquardt </**publisher**>  <**pubPlace**>Bruxelles &amp; Leipzig</**pubPlace**>  <**date** **when**="1846"/> </**publicationStmt**> |
| **Example** | <**publicationStmt**>  <**publisher**>Chadwyck Healey</**publisher**>  <**pubPlace**>Cambridge</**pubPlace**>  <**availability**>   <**p**>Available under licence only</**p**>  </**availability**>  <**date** **when**="1992">1992</**date**> </**publicationStmt**> |
| **Example** | <**publicationStmt**>  <**publisher**>Zea Books</**publisher**>  <**pubPlace**>Lincoln, NE</**pubPlace**>  <**date**>2017</**date**>  <**availability**>   <**p**>This is an open access work licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International license.</**p**>  </**availability**>  <**ptr** **target**="http://digitalcommons.unl.edu/zeabook/55"/> </**publicationStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.agency"/>    <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.detail"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element publicationStmt {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  (  (  [tei\_model.publicationStmtPart.agency](#TEI.tei_model.publicationStmtPart.agency),  [tei\_model.publicationStmtPart.detail](#TEI.tei_model.publicationStmtPart.detail)\*  )+  | [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+  ) } |

## <publisher>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<publisher>** provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [[3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl imprint  **header:** publicationStmt  **textstructure:** docImprint |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page |
| **Example** | <**imprint**>  <**pubPlace**>Oxford</**pubPlace**>  <**publisher**>Clarendon Press</**publisher**>  <**date**>1987</**date**> </**imprint**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element publisher { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq) } |

## <punctuation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<punctuation>** specifies editorial practice adopted with respect to punctuation marks in the original. [[2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD53) [3.2. Treatment of Punctuation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COPU)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declarable (@default) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **marks** | indicates whether or not punctation marks have been retained as content within the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **none** no punctuation marks have been retained  **some** some punctuation marks have been retained  **all** all punctuation marks have been retained | | | **placement** | indicates whether punctation marks have been captured inside or outside of an adjacent element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **internal** punctuation marks are captured inside adjacent elements  **external** punctuation marks are captured outside adjacent elements | | |
| **Member of** | model.editorialDeclPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** editorialDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab |
| **Example** | <**punctuation** **marks**="all"  **placement**="internal">  <**p**>All punctuation marks in the source text have been retained and represented using the    appropriate Unicode code point. In cases where a punctuation mark and nearby markup convey    the same information (for example, a sentence ends with a question mark and is also tagged    as <**gi**>s</**gi**>) the punctuation mark is captured as content within the element.  </**p**> </**punctuation**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.pLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element punctuation {  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute marks { "none" | "some" | "all" }?,  attribute placement { "internal" | "external" }?,  [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)\* } |

## <purpose>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<purpose>** characterizes a single purpose or communicative function of the text. [[15.2.1. The Text Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHTD)] | |
| **Module** | corpus |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | specifies a particular kind of purpose.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Suggested values include:** | **persuade** didactic, advertising, propaganda, etc.  **express** self expression, confessional, etc.  **inform** convey information, educate, etc.  **entertain** amuse, entertain, etc. | | | **degree** | specifies the extent to which this purpose predominates.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.certainty](#teidata.certainty) | | **Note** | Values should be interpreted as follows.  high this purpose is predominant  medium this purpose is intermediate  low this purpose is weak  unknown extent unknown | | |
| **Contained by** | **corpus:** textDesc |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  character data |
| **Note** | Usually empty, unless some further clarification of the type attribute is needed, in which case it may contain running prose |
| **Example** | <**purpose** **degree**="high" **type**="persuade"/> <**purpose** **degree**="low" **type**="entertain"/> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element purpose {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute type { "persuade" | "express" | "inform" | "entertain" }?,  attribute degree { text }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

## <q>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<q>** (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used. [[3.3.3. Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.ascribed (@who)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | may be used to indicate whether the offset passage is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Suggested values include:** | **spoken** representation of speech  **thought** representation of thought, e.g. internal monologue  **written** quotation from a written source  **soCalled** authorial distance  **foreign**  **distinct** linguistically distinct  **term** technical term  **emph** rhetorically emphasized  **mentioned** refering to itself, not its normal referent | | |
| **Member of** | model.qLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear  **header:** change licence rendition tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** body div docEdition imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, <q> may be thought of as syntactic sugar for <hi> with a value of *@rend* that indicates the use of such mechanisms as quotation marks. |
| **Example** | It is spelled <**q**>Tübingen</**q**> — to enter the  letter <**q**>u</**q**> with an umlaut hold down the <**q**>option</**q**> key and press  <**q**>0 0 f c</**q**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element q {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.ascribed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.ascribed),  attribute type  {  "spoken"  | "thought"  | "written"  | "soCalled"  | "foreign"  | "distinct"  | "term"  | "emph"  | "mentioned"  }?,  [tei\_macro.specialPara](#TEI.tei_macro.specialPara)} |

## <quotation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<quotation>** specifies editorial practice adopted with respect to quotation marks in the original. [[2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD53) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **marks** | (quotation marks) indicates whether or not quotation marks have been retained as content within the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **none** no quotation marks have been retained  **some** some quotation marks have been retained  **all** all quotation marks have been retained | | |
| **Member of** | model.editorialDeclPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** editorialDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab |
| **Example** | <**quotation** **marks**="none">  <**p**>No quotation marks have been retained. Instead, the <**att**>rend</**att**> attribute on the  <**gi**>q</**gi**> element is used to specify what kinds of quotation mark was used, according    to the following list: <**list** **type**="gloss">    <**label**>dq</**label**>    <**item**>double quotes, open and close</**item**>    <**label**>sq</**label**>    <**item**>single quotes, open and close</**item**>    <**label**>dash</**label**>    <**item**>long dash open, no close</**item**>    <**label**>dg</**label**>    <**item**>double guillemets, open and close</**item**>   </**list**>  </**p**> </**quotation**> |
| **Example** | <**quotation** **marks**="all">  <**p**>All quotation marks are retained in the text and are represented by appropriate Unicode    characters.</**p**> </**quotation**> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="not(@marks) and not (tei:p)">On <s:name/>, either the @marks attribute should be used, or a paragraph of description provided</s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.pLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element quotation {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  attribute marks { "none" | "some" | "all" }?,  [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)\* } |

## <quote>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<quote>** (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text. [[3.3.3. Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ) [4.3.1. Grouped Texts](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSGRP)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.quoteLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear  **header:** change licence rendition tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** body div docEdition imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | If a bibliographic citation is supplied for the source of a quotation, the two may be grouped using the <cit> element. |
| **Example** | Lexicography has shown little sign of being affected by the  work of followers of J.R. Firth, probably best summarized in his  slogan, <**quote**>You shall know a word by the company it  keeps</**quote**> <**ref**>(Firth, 1957)</**ref**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element quote {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_macro.specialPara](#TEI.tei_macro.specialPara)} |

## <ref>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<ref>** (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. [[3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COXR) [16.1. Links](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAPT)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.internetMedia (@mimeType) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) att.cReferencing (@cRef) |
| **Member of** | model.ptrLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s span  **core:** abbr add addrLine analytic author bibl biblScope biblStruct cit citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned monogr name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg relatedItem resp rs said series sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** application authority catDesc change classCode correspContext creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal publicationStmt rendition sponsor tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | The *@target* and *@cRef* attributes are mutually exclusive. |
| **Example** | See especially <**ref** **target**="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2">the second  sentence</**ref**> |
| **Example** | See also <**ref** **target**="#locution">s.v. <**term**>locution</**term**> </**ref**>. |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target' and @cRef' may be supplied on <s:name/> </s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element ref {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.pointing),  [tei\_att.internetMedia.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.internetMedia),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declaring),  [tei\_att.cReferencing.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.cReferencing),  [tei\_macro.paraContent](#TEI.tei_macro.paraContent)} |

## <refState>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<refState>** (reference state) specifies one component of a canonical reference defined by the milestone method. [[2.3.6.3. Milestone Method](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD54M) [2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD54)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.milestoneUnit (@unit) att.edition (@ed, @edRef)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **length** | specifies the fixed length of the reference component.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.count](#teidata.count) | | **Note** | When constructing a reference, if the reference component found is of numeric type, the length is made up by inserting leading zeros; if it is not, by inserting trailing blanks. In either case, reference components are truncated if necessary at the right hand side.  When seeking a reference, the length indicates the number of characters which should be compared. Values longer than this will be regarded as matching, if they start correctly. If no value is provided, the length is unlimited and goes to the next delimiter or to the end of the value. | | | **delim** | (delimiter) supplies a delimiting string following the reference component.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.text](#teidata.text) | | |
| **Contained by** | **header:** refsDecl |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Example** | <**refState** **delim**=":" **unit**="book"/> <**refState** **length**="4" **unit**="line"/> |
| **Content model** | <content> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element refState {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.milestoneUnit.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.milestoneUnit),  [tei\_att.edition.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.edition),  attribute length { text }?,  attribute delim { text }?,  empty } |

## <refsDecl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<refsDecl>** (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text. [[2.3.6.3. Milestone Method](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD54M) [2.3. The Encoding Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5) [2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD54)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **header:** cRefPattern refState  **linking:** ab |
| **Example** | <**refsDecl**>  <**cRefPattern** **matchPattern**="([A-Za-z0-9]+) ([0-9]+):([0-9]+)"   **replacementPattern**="#xpath(//body/div[@n='$1']/div[$2]/div3[$3])"/> </**refsDecl**>  This example is a formal representation for the referencing scheme described informally in the following example. |
| **Example** | <**refsDecl**>  <**p**>References are made up by concatenating the value for the  <**att**>n</**att**> attribute on the highest level <**gi**>div</**gi**>    element, followed by a space, followed by the sequential    number of the next level <**gi**>div</**gi**> followed by a colon    followed by the sequential number of the next (and lowest)    level <**gi**>div</**gi**>.</**p**> </**refsDecl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <elementRef key="cRefPattern"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <elementRef key="refState"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element refsDecl {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  ( [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+ | [tei\_cRefPattern](#TEI.tei_cRefPattern)+ | [tei\_refState](#TEI.tei_refState)+ ) } |

## <reg>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<reg>** (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense. [[3.4.2. Regularization and Normalization](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDREG) [12. Critical Apparatus](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TC.html#TC)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl pc phr s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **header:** change distributor edition extent geoDecl licence  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been regularized, <reg> may be used alone:  <**q**>Please <**reg**>knock</**reg**> if an <**reg**>answer</**reg**> is <**reg**>required</**reg**> </**q**> |
| **Example** | It is also possible to identify the individual responsible for the regularization, and, using the <choice> and <orig> elements, to provide both the original and regularized readings:  <**q**>Please <**choice**>   <**reg** **resp**="#LB">knock</**reg**>   <**orig**>cnk</**orig**>  </**choice**> if an <**choice**>   <**reg**>answer</**reg**>   <**orig**>nsr</**orig**>  </**choice**> is <**choice**>   <**reg**>required</**reg**>   <**orig**>reqd</**orig**>  </**choice**> </**q**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element reg {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_macro.paraContent](#TEI.tei_macro.paraContent)} |

## <relatedItem>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<relatedItem>** contains or references some other bibliographic item which is related to the present one in some specified manner, for example as a constituent or alternative version of it. [[3.11.2.7. Related Items](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBIRI)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **target** | points to the related bibliographic element by means of an absolute or relative URI reference   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl biblStruct  **header:** notesStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct listBibl ptr ref  **header:** biblFull |
| **Note** | If the *@target* attribute is used to reference the related bibliographic item, the element must be empty. |
| **Example** | <**biblStruct**>  <**monogr**>   <**author**>Shirley, James</**author**>   <**title** **type**="main">The gentlemen of Venice</**title**>   <**imprint**>    <**pubPlace**>New York</**pubPlace**>    <**publisher**>Readex Microprint</**publisher**>    <**date**>1953</**date**>   </**imprint**>   <**extent**>1 microprint card, 23 x 15 cm.</**extent**>  </**monogr**>  <**series**>   <**title**>Three centuries of drama: English, 1642–1700</**title**>  </**series**>  <**relatedItem** **type**="otherForm">   <**biblStruct**>    <**monogr**>     <**author**>Shirley, James</**author**>     <**title** **type**="main">The gentlemen of Venice</**title**>     <**title** **type**="sub">a tragi-comedie presented at the private house in Salisbury          Court by Her Majesties servants</**title**>     <**imprint**>      <**pubPlace**>London</**pubPlace**>      <**publisher**>H. Moseley</**publisher**>      <**date**>1655</**date**>     </**imprint**>     <**extent**>78 p.</**extent**>    </**monogr**>   </**biblStruct**>  </**relatedItem**> </**biblStruct**> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:report test="@target and count( child::\* ) > 0">If the @target attribute on <sch:name/> is used, the relatedItem element must be empty</sch:report> <sch:assert test="@target or child::\*">A relatedItem element should have either a 'target' attribute or a child element to indicate the related bibliographic item</sch:assert> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate minOccurs="0">   <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>   <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element relatedItem {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute target { text }?,  ( [tei\_model.biblLike](#TEI.tei_model.biblLike) | [tei\_model.ptrLike](#TEI.tei_model.ptrLike) )? } |

## <rendition>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<rendition>** supplies information about the rendition or appearance of one or more elements in the source text. [[2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD57)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.styleDef (@scheme, @schemeVersion)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **scope** | where CSS is used, provides a way of defining ‘pseudo-elements’, that is, styling rules applicable to specific sub-portions of an element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Sample values include:** | **first-line** styling applies to the first line of the target element  **first-letter** styling applies to the first letter of the target element  **before** styling should be applied immediately before the content of the target element  **after** styling should be applied immediately after the content of the target element | | | **selector** | contains a selector or series of selectors specifying the elements to which the contained style description applies, expressed in the language specified in the *@scheme* attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.text](#teidata.text) | | <**rendition** **scheme**="css"  **selector**="text, front, back, body, div, p, ab">   display: block; </**rendition**> | | | <**rendition** **scheme**="css"  **selector**="\*[rend\*=italic]"> font-style: italic; </**rendition**> | | | **Note** | Since the default value of the *@scheme* attribute is assumed to be CSS, the default expectation for this attribute, in the absence of *@scheme*, is that CSS selector syntax will be used. | | **Note** | While *@rendition* is used to point from an element in the transcribed source to a <rendition> element in the header which describes how it appears, the *@selector* attribute allows the encoder to point in the other direction: from a <rendition> in the header to a collection of elements which all share the same renditional features. In both cases, the intention is to record the appearance of the source text, not to prescribe any particular output rendering. | | |
| **Contained by** | **header:** tagsDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title  **header:** biblFull idno  character data |
| **Example** | <**tagsDecl**>  <**rendition** **scheme**="css" **xml:id**="r-center">text-align: center;</**rendition**>  <**rendition** **scheme**="css" **xml:id**="r-small">font-size: small;</**rendition**>  <**rendition** **scheme**="css" **xml:id**="r-large">font-size: large;</**rendition**>  <**rendition** **scheme**="css"   **scope**="first-letter" **xml:id**="initcaps">font-size: xx-large</**rendition**> </**tagsDecl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element rendition {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.styleDef.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.styleDef),  attribute scope { text }?,  attribute selector { text }?,  [tei\_macro.limitedContent](#TEI.tei_macro.limitedContent)} |

## <resp>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<resp>** (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work. [[3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR) [2.2.1. The Title Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21) [2.2.2. The Edition Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD22) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** respStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  character data |
| **Note** | The attribute *@ref*, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form by referring directly to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at <http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html> for bibliographic usage. |
| **Example** | <**respStmt**>  <**resp** **ref**="http://id.loc.gov/vocabulary/relators/com.html">compiler</**resp**>  <**name**>Edward Child</**name**> </**respStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element resp {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.canonical),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

## <respStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<respStmt>** (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work. [[3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR) [2.2.1. The Title Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21) [2.2.2. The Edition Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD22) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** analytic bibl imprint monogr series  **header:** editionStmt seriesStmt titleStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** name note resp |
| **Example** | <**respStmt**>  <**resp**>transcribed from original ms</**resp**>  <**persName**>Claus Huitfeldt</**persName**> </**respStmt**> |
| **Example** | <**respStmt**>  <**resp**>converted to XML encoding</**resp**>  <**name**>Alan Morrison</**name**> </**respStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate>    <sequence>     <elementRef key="resp"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>     <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    </sequence>    <sequence>     <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>     <elementRef key="resp"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    </sequence>   </alternate>   <elementRef key="note"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element respStmt {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.canonical),  (  (  ( [tei\_resp](#TEI.tei_resp)+, [tei\_model.nameLike.agent](#TEI.tei_model.nameLike.agent)+ )  | ( [tei\_model.nameLike.agent](#TEI.tei_model.nameLike.agent)+, [tei\_resp](#TEI.tei_resp)+ )  ),  [tei\_note](#TEI.tei_note)\*  ) } |

## <revisionDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<revisionDesc>** (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file. [[2.6. The Revision Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6) [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.docStatus (@status) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **core:** list  **header:** change listChange |
| **Note** | If present on this element, the *@status* attribute should indicate the current status of the document. The same attribute may appear on any <change> to record the status at the time of that change. Conventionally <change> elements should be given in reverse date order, with the most recent change at the start of the list. |
| **Example** | <**revisionDesc** **status**="embargoed">  <**change** **when**="1991-11-11" **who**="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </**change**> </**revisionDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <elementRef key="list"/>   <elementRef key="listChange"/>   <elementRef key="change"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element revisionDesc {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.docStatus.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.docStatus),  ( [tei\_list](#TEI.tei_list) | [tei\_listChange](#TEI.tei_listChange) | [tei\_change](#TEI.tei_change)+ ) } |

## <rs>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<rs>** (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER) [3.5.1. Referring Strings](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONARS)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s span  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**q**>My dear <**rs** **type**="person">Mr. Bennet</**rs**>, </**q**> said <**rs** **type**="person">his lady</**rs**>  to him one day,  <**q**>have you heard that <**rs** **type**="place">Netherfield Park</**rs**> is let at  last?</**q**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element rs {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <s>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<s>** (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text. [[17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILC) [8.4.1. Segmentation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSSASE)] | |
| **Module** | analysis |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.segLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **header:** change distributor edition extent geoDecl licence  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | The <s> element may be used to mark orthographic sentences, or any other segmentation of a text, provided that the segmentation is end-to-end, complete, and non-nesting. For segmentation which is partial or recursive, the <seg> should be used instead.  The *@type* attribute may be used to indicate the type of segmentation intended, according to any convenient typology. |
| **Example** | <**head**>  <**s**>A short affair</**s**> </**head**> <**s**>When are you leaving?</**s**> <**s**>Tomorrow.</**s**> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="tei:s">You may not nest one s element within another: use seg instead</s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element s {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.segLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.segLike),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <said>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<said>** (speech or thought) indicates passages thought or spoken aloud, whether explicitly indicated in the source or not, whether directly or indirectly reported, whether by real people or fictional characters. [[3.3.3. Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.ascribed (@who)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **aloud** | may be used to indicate whether the quoted matter is regarded as having been vocalized or signed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.xTruthValue](#teidata.xTruthValue) | | **Default** | unknown   |  |  | | --- | --- | | [Deprecated](http://www.tei-c.org/Activities/Council/Working/tcw27.xml) | The value will no longer be a default after 2017-09-05 | | | <**p**> Celia thought privately, <**said** **aloud**="false">Dorothea quite despises Sir James Chettam;    I believe she would not accept him.</**said**> Celia felt that this was a pity.  <!-- ... --> </**p**> | | | **Note** | The value true indicates the encoded passage was expressed outwardly (whether spoken, signed, sung, screamed, chanted, etc.); the value false indicates that the encoded passage was thought, but not outwardly expressed. | | | **direct** | may be used to indicate whether the quoted matter is regarded as direct or indirect speech.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.xTruthValue](#teidata.xTruthValue) | | **Default** | true | | <!-- in the header --><**editorialDecl**>  <**quotation** **marks**="none"/> </**editorialDecl**> <!-- ... --> <**p**> Tantripp had brought a card, and said that there was a gentleman waiting in the lobby.  The courier had told him that <**said** **direct**="false">only Mrs. Casaubon was at home</**said**>,  but he said <**said** **direct**="false">he was a relation of Mr. Casaubon's: would she see him?</**said**> </**p**> | | | **Note** | The value true indicates the speech or thought is represented directly; the value false that speech or thought is represented indirectly, e.g. by use of a marked verbal aspect. | | |
| **Member of** | model.qLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear  **header:** change licence rendition tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** body div docEdition imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <!-- in the header --><**editorialDecl**>  <**quotation** **marks**="all"/> </**editorialDecl**> <!-- ... --> <**p**>  <**said**>"Our minstrel here will warm the old man's heart with song, dazzle him with jewels and    gold"</**said**>, a troublemaker simpered. <**said**>"He'll trample on the Duke's camellias, spill    his wine, and blunt his sword, and say his name begins with X, and in the end the Duke    will say, <**said**>'Take Saralinda, with my blessing, O lordly Prince of Rags and Tags, O      rider of the sun!'</**said**>"</**said**> </**p**> |
| **Example** | <**p**>  <**said** **aloud**="true" **rend**="pre(“) post(”)">Hmmm</**said**>, said a small voice in his ear. <**said** **aloud**="true" **rend**="pre(“) post(”)">Difficult. Very difficult. Plenty of courage, I see.    Not a bad mind either. there's talent, oh my goodness, yes — and a nice thirst to prove    yourself, now that's interesting. … So where shall I put you?</**said**> </**p**> <**p**>Harry gripped the edges of the stool and thought, <**said** **aloud**="false" **rend**="italic">Not    Slytherin, not Slytherin</**said**>.</**p**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element said {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.ascribed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.ascribed),  attribute aloud { text }?,  attribute direct { text }?,  [tei\_macro.specialPara](#TEI.tei_macro.specialPara)} |

## <salute>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<salute>** (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc. [[4.2.2. Openers and Closers](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSOC)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.divWrapper |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **textstructure:** body closer div front group opener |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**salute**>To all courteous mindes, that will voutchsafe the readinge.</**salute**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element salute {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.written.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.written),  [tei\_macro.paraContent](#TEI.tei_macro.paraContent)} |

## <samplingDecl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<samplingDecl>** (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection. [[2.3.2. The Sampling Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD52) [2.3. The Encoding Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab |
| **Note** | This element records all information about systematic inclusion or omission of portions of the text, whether a reflection of sampling procedures in the pure sense or of systematic omission of material deemed either too difficult to transcribe or not of sufficient interest. |
| **Example** | <**samplingDecl**>  <**p**>Samples of up to 2000 words taken at random from the beginning, middle, or end of each    text identified as relevant by respondents.</**p**> </**samplingDecl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.pLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element samplingDecl {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+ } |

## <schemaRef>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<schemaRef>** (schema reference) describes or points to a related customization or schema file [[2.3.9. The Schema Specification](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HDSCHSPEC)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.resourced (@url)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **key** | the identifier used for the customization or schema   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.xmlName](#teidata.xmlName) | | |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc |
| **Example** | <**schemaRef** **type**="interchangeODD"  **url**="http://www.tei-c.org/release/xml/tei/custom/odd/tei\_lite.odd"/> <**schemaRef** **type**="interchangeRNG"  **url**="http://www.tei-c.org/release/xml/tei/custom/odd/tei\_lite.rng"/> <**schemaRef** **type**="projectODD"  **url**="file:///schema/project.odd"/> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.descLike"   minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element schemaRef {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.resourced.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.resourced),  attribute key { text }?,  [tei\_model.descLike](#TEI.tei_model.descLike)? } |

## <seg>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<seg>** (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the ‘chunk’ level. [[16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASE) [6.2. Components of the Verse Line](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/VE.html#VESE) [7.2.5. Speech Contents](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.choicePart model.segLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl m phr s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **header:** change distributor edition extent geoDecl licence  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | The <seg> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any segments of the text of interest for processing. One use of the element is to mark text features for which no appropriate markup is otherwise defined. Another use is to provide an identifier for some segment which is to be pointed at by some other element—i.e. to provide a target, or a part of a target, for a <ptr> or other similar element. |
| **Example** | <**seg**>When are you leaving?</**seg**> <**seg**>Tomorrow.</**seg**> |
| **Example** | <**s**>  <**seg** **rend**="caps" **type**="initial-cap">So father's only</**seg**> glory was the ballfield.  </**s**> |
| **Example** | <**seg** **type**="preamble">  <**seg**>Sigmund, <**seg** **type**="patronym">the son of Volsung</**seg**>, was a king in Frankish country.</**seg**>  <**seg**>Sinfiotli was the eldest of his sons ...</**seg**>  <**seg**>Borghild, Sigmund's wife, had a brother ... </**seg**> </**seg**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element seg {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.segLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.segLike),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.written.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.written),  [tei\_macro.paraContent](#TEI.tei_macro.paraContent)} |

## <segmentation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<segmentation>** describes the principles according to which the text has been segmented, for example into sentences, tone-units, graphemic strata, etc. [[2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD53) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.editorialDeclPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** editorialDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab |
| **Example** | <**segmentation**>  <**p**>   <**gi**>s</**gi**> elements mark orthographic sentences and are numbered sequentially within    their parent <**gi**>div</**gi**> element </**p**> </**segmentation**> |
| **Example** | <**p**>  <**gi**>seg</**gi**> elements are used to mark functional constituents of various types within each <**gi**>s</**gi**>; the typology used is defined by a <**gi**>taxonomy</**gi**> element in the corpus  header <**gi**>classDecl</**gi**> </**p**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.pLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element segmentation {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+ } |

## <series>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<series>** (series information) contains information about the series in which a book or other bibliographic item has appeared. [[3.11.2.1. Analytic, Monographic, and Series Levels](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOL)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl biblStruct |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** biblScope cb editor gap index lb milestone note pb ptr ref respStmt textLang title  **gaiji:** g  **header:** availability idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**series** **xml:lang**="de">  <**title** **level**="s">Halbgraue Reihe zur Historischen Fachinformatik</**title**>  <**respStmt**>   <**resp**>Herausgegeben von</**resp**>   <**name** **type**="person">Manfred Thaller</**name**>   <**name** **type**="org">Max-Planck-Institut für Geschichte</**name**>  </**respStmt**>  <**title** **level**="s">Serie A: Historische Quellenkunden</**title**>  <**biblScope**>Band 11</**biblScope**> </**series**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <elementRef key="title"/>   <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>   <elementRef key="editor"/>   <elementRef key="respStmt"/>   <elementRef key="biblScope"/>   <elementRef key="idno"/>   <elementRef key="textLang"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>   <elementRef key="availability"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element series {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  (  text  | [tei\_model.gLike](#TEI.tei_model.gLike) | [tei\_title](#TEI.tei_title) | [tei\_model.ptrLike](#TEI.tei_model.ptrLike) | [tei\_editor](#TEI.tei_editor) | [tei\_respStmt](#TEI.tei_respStmt) | [tei\_biblScope](#TEI.tei_biblScope) | [tei\_idno](#TEI.tei_idno) | [tei\_textLang](#TEI.tei_textLang) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) | [tei\_availability](#TEI.tei_availability) )\* } |

## <seriesStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<seriesStmt>** (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. [[2.2.5. The Series Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26) [2.2. The File Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** biblFull fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** biblScope editor p respStmt title  **header:** idno  **linking:** ab |
| **Example** | <**seriesStmt**>  <**title**>Machine-Readable Texts for the Study of Indian Literature</**title**>  <**respStmt**>   <**resp**>ed. by</**resp**>   <**name**>Jan Gonda</**name**>  </**respStmt**>  <**biblScope** **unit**="volume">1.2</**biblScope**>  <**idno** **type**="ISSN">0 345 6789</**idno**> </**seriesStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <sequence>    <elementRef key="title"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <elementRef key="editor"/>     <elementRef key="respStmt"/>    </alternate>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <elementRef key="idno"/>     <elementRef key="biblScope"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element seriesStmt {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  (  [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+  | (  [tei\_title](#TEI.tei_title)+,  ( [tei\_editor](#TEI.tei_editor) | [tei\_respStmt](#TEI.tei_respStmt) )\*,  ( [tei\_idno](#TEI.tei_idno) | [tei\_biblScope](#TEI.tei_biblScope) )\*  )  ) } |

## <setting>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<setting>** describes one particular setting in which a language interaction takes place. [[15.2.3. The Setting Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHSE)] | |
| **Module** | corpus |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.ascribed (@who) |
| **Contained by** | **corpus:** settingDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** date name p time  **corpus:** activity locale  **linking:** ab |
| **Note** | If the *@who* attribute is not supplied, the setting is assumed to be that of all participants in the language interaction. |
| **Example** | <**setting**>  <**name**>New York City, US</**name**>  <**date**>1989</**date**>  <**locale**>on a park bench</**locale**>  <**activity**>feeding birds</**activity**> </**setting**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"/>    <classRef key="model.dateLike"/>    <classRef key="model.settingPart"/>   </alternate>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element setting {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.ascribed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.ascribed),  (  [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+  | ( [tei\_model.nameLike.agent](#TEI.tei_model.nameLike.agent) | [tei\_model.dateLike](#TEI.tei_model.dateLike) | [tei\_model.settingPart](#TEI.tei_model.settingPart) )\*  ) } |

## <settingDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<settingDesc>** (setting description) describes the setting or settings within which a language interaction takes place, or other places otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [[15.2. Contextual Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAH) [2.4. The Profile Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4)] | |
| **Module** | corpus |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.profileDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** profileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **corpus:** setting  **linking:** ab |
| **Note** | May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a series of <setting> elements. If used to record not settings of language interactions, but other places mentioned in the text, then <place> optionally grouped by <listPlace> should be preferred. |
| **Example** | <**settingDesc**>  <**p**>Texts recorded in the    Canadian Parliament building in Ottawa, between April and November 1988 </**p**> </**settingDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <elementRef key="setting"/>    <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>    <elementRef key="listPlace"/>   </alternate>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element settingDesc {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  ( [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+ | ( [tei\_setting](#TEI.tei_setting) | [tei\_model.placeLike](#TEI.tei_model.placeLike) | [listPlace](#TEI.listPlace) )+ ) } |

## <sic>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<sic>** (Latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate. [[3.4.1. Apparent Errors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDCOR)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl pc phr s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **header:** change distributor edition extent geoDecl licence  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | for his nose was as sharp as  a pen, and <**sic**>a Table</**sic**> of green fields. |
| **Example** | If all that is desired is to call attention to the apparent problem in the copy text, <sic> may be used alone:  I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now  — how <**sic**>we can</**sic**> prove or disprove anyone's theories? |
| **Example** | It is also possible, using the <choice> and <corr> elements, to provide a corrected reading:  I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now  — how <**choice**>  <**sic**>we can</**sic**>  <**corr**>can we</**corr**> </**choice**> prove or disprove anyone's theories? |
| **Example** | for his nose was as sharp as  a pen, and <**choice**>  <**sic**>a Table</**sic**>  <**corr**>a' babbld</**corr**> </**choice**> of green fields. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element sic { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_macro.paraContent](#TEI.tei_macro.paraContent) } |

## <signed>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<signed>** (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text. [[4.2.2. Openers and Closers](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSOC)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.divBottomPart model.divTopPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **textstructure:** back body closer div front group opener postscript |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**signed**>Thine to command <**name**>Humph. Moseley</**name**> </**signed**> |
| **Example** | <**closer**>  <**signed**>Sign'd and Seal'd,  <**list**>    <**item**>John Bull,</**item**>    <**item**>Nic. Frog.</**item**>   </**list**>  </**signed**> </**closer**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element signed {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.written.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.written),  [tei\_macro.paraContent](#TEI.tei_macro.paraContent)} |

## <soCalled>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<soCalled>** contains a word or phrase for which the author or narrator indicates a disclaiming of responsibility, for example by the use of scare quotes or italics. [[3.3.3. Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s span  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | To edge his way along  the crowded paths of life, warning all human sympathy to keep its distance, was what the  knowing ones call <**soCalled**>nuts</**soCalled**> to Scrooge. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element soCalled { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq) } |

## <sourceDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<sourceDesc>** (source description) describes the source from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence. [[2.2.7. The Source Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** biblFull fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct list listBibl p  **header:** biblFull  **linking:** ab |
| **Example** | <**sourceDesc**>  <**bibl**>   <**title** **level**="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</**title**>. In  <**author**>Victor E Neuberg</**author**>, <**title**>The Penny Histories</**title**>.  <**publisher**>OUP</**publisher**>   <**date**>1968</**date**>. </**bibl**> </**sourceDesc**> |
| **Example** | <**sourceDesc**>  <**p**>Born digital: no previous source exists.</**p**> </**sourceDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    <classRef key="model.sourceDescPart"/>    <classRef key="model.listLike"/>   </alternate>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element sourceDesc {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  (  [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+  | ( [tei\_model.biblLike](#TEI.tei_model.biblLike) | [tei\_model.sourceDescPart](#TEI.tei_model.sourceDescPart) | [tei\_model.listLike](#TEI.tei_model.listLike) )+  ) } |

## <sp>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<sp>** (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text. [[3.12.2. Core Tags for Drama](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CODR) [3.12. Passages of Verse or Drama](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CODV) [7.2.2. Speeches and Speakers](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRSP)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.ascribed (@who) |
| **Member of** | model.divPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** item note q quote said stage  **header:** change licence  **textstructure:** body div postscript |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** cb cit gap index l lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote said speaker stage  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline |
| **Note** | The *@who* attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the <speaker> element or as an alternative. |
| **Example** | <**sp**>  <**speaker**>The reverend Doctor Opimian</**speaker**>  <**p**>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</**p**> </**sp**> <**sp**>  <**speaker**>Mr Gryll</**speaker**>  <**p**>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</**p**> </**sp**> <**sp**>  <**speaker**>The Reverend Doctor Opimian</**speaker**>  <**p**>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the first place [...]</**p**>  <**p**>Fish, Miss Gryll — I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but for the present I    will forbear [...]</**p**> </**sp**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.global"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="speaker"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <alternate>     <elementRef key="lg"/>     <classRef key="model.lLike"/>     <classRef key="model.pLike"/>     <classRef key="model.listLike"/>     <classRef key="model.stageLike"/>     <classRef key="model.qLike"/>    </alternate>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element sp {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.ascribed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.ascribed),  (  [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\*,  ( [tei\_speaker](#TEI.tei_speaker), [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\* )?,  (  (  [tei\_lg](#TEI.tei_lg) | [tei\_model.lLike](#TEI.tei_model.lLike) | [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike) | [tei\_model.listLike](#TEI.tei_model.listLike) | [tei\_model.stageLike](#TEI.tei_model.stageLike) | [tei\_model.qLike](#TEI.tei_model.qLike) ),  [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\*  )+  ) } |

## <span>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<span>** associates an interpretative annotation directly with a span of text. [[17.3. Spans and Interpretations](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AISP)] | |
| **Module** | analysis |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.interpLike (@type, @inst) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **from** | gives the identifier of the node which is the starting point of the span of text being annotated; if not accompanied by a *@to* attribute, gives the identifier of the node of the entire span of text being annotated.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | | **to** | gives the identifier of the node which is the end-point of the span of text being annotated.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | |
| **Member of** | model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl m phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**p** **xml:id**="para2">(The "aftermath" starts here)</**p**> <**p** **xml:id**="para3">(The "aftermath" continues here)</**p**> <**p** **xml:id**="para4">(The "aftermath" ends in this paragraph)</**p**> <!-- ... --> <**span** **from**="#para2" **to**="#para4"  **type**="structure">aftermath</**span**> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="@from and @target">Only one of the attributes @target and @from may be supplied on <s:name/> </s:report> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="@to and @target">Only one of the attributes @target and @to may be supplied on <s:name/> </s:report> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="@to and not(@from)">If @to is supplied on <s:name/>, @from must be supplied as well</s:report> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="contains(normalize-space(@to),' ') or contains(normalize-space(@from),' ')">The attributes @to and @from on <s:name/> may each contain only a single value</s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element span {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.interpLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.interpLike),  [tei\_att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.pointing),  attribute from { text }?,  attribute to { text }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

## <spanGrp>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<spanGrp>** (span group) collects together span tags. [[17.3. Spans and Interpretations](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AISP)] | |
| **Module** | analysis |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.interpLike (@type, @inst) |
| **Member of** | model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl m phr s span w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span |
| **Example** | <**u** **xml:id**="UU1">Can I have ten oranges and a kilo of bananas please?</**u**> <**u** **xml:id**="UU2">Yes, anything else?</**u**> <**u** **xml:id**="UU3">No thanks.</**u**> <**u** **xml:id**="UU4">That'll be dollar forty.</**u**> <**u** **xml:id**="UU5">Two dollars</**u**> <**u** **xml:id**="UU6">Sixty, eighty, two dollars. <**anchor** **xml:id**="UU6e"/>Thank you.<**anchor** **xml:id**="UU6f"/> </**u**> <**spanGrp** **type**="transactions">  <**span** **from**="#UU1">sale request</**span**>  <**span** **from**="#UU2" **to**="#UU3">sale compliance</**span**>  <**span** **from**="#UU4">sale</**span**>  <**span** **from**="#UU5" **to**="#UU6">purchase</**span**>  <**span** **from**="#UU6e" **to**="#UU6f">purchase closure</**span**> </**spanGrp**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <elementRef key="span"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element spanGrp {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.interpLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.interpLike),  [tei\_span](#TEI.tei_span)\* } |

## <speaker>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<speaker>** contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment. [[3.12.2. Core Tags for Drama](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CODR)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** sp |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**sp** **who**="#ni #rsa">  <**speaker**>Nancy and Robert</**speaker**>  <**stage** **type**="delivery">(speaking simultaneously)</**stage**>  <**p**>The future? ...</**p**> </**sp**> <**list** **type**="speakers">  <**item** **xml:id**="ni"/>  <**item** **xml:id**="rsa"/> </**list**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element speaker { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq) } |

## <sponsor>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<sponsor>** specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution. [[2.2.1. The Title Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl monogr  **header:** editionStmt titleStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  character data |
| **Note** | Sponsors give their intellectual authority to a project; they are to be distinguished from funders (see element <funder>), who provide the funding but do not necessarily take intellectual responsibility. |
| **Example** | <**sponsor**>Association for Computers and the Humanities</**sponsor**> <**sponsor**>Association for Computational Linguistics</**sponsor**> <**sponsor** **ref**="http://www.allc.org/">Association for Literary and Linguistic Computing</**sponsor**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element sponsor {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.canonical),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

## <stage>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<stage>** (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment. [[3.12.2. Core Tags for Drama](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CODR) [3.12. Passages of Verse or Drama](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CODV) [7.2.4. Stage Directions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRSTA)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.ascribed (@who) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.placement (@place)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | indicates the kind of stage direction.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | 0–∞ occurrences of [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) separated by whitespace | | **Suggested values include:** | **setting** describes a setting.  **entrance** describes an entrance.  **exit** describes an exit.  **business** describes stage business.  **novelistic** is a narrative, motivating stage direction.  **delivery** describes how a character speaks.  **modifier** gives some detail about a character.  **location** describes a location.  **mixed** more than one of the above | | **Note** | If the value mixed is used, it must be the only value. Multiple values may however be supplied if a single stage direction performs multiple functions, for example is both an entrance and a modifier. | | |
| **Member of** | model.stageLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del desc emph head hi item l lg meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear  **header:** change licence rendition tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** body div docEdition imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | The *@who* attribute may be used to indicate more precisely the person or persons participating in the action described by the stage direction. |
| **Example** | <**stage** **type**="setting">A curtain being drawn.</**stage**> <**stage** **type**="setting">Music</**stage**> <**stage** **type**="entrance">Enter Husband as being thrown off his horse and falls.</**stage**> <!-- Middleton : Yorkshire Tragedy --> <**stage** **type**="exit">Exit pursued by a bear.</**stage**> <**stage** **type**="business">He quickly takes the stone out.</**stage**> <**stage** **type**="delivery">To Lussurioso.</**stage**> <**stage** **type**="novelistic">Having had enough, and embarrassed for the family.</**stage**> <!-- Lorraine Hansbury : a raisin in in the sun --> <**stage** **type**="modifier">Disguised as Ansaldo.</**stage**> <**stage** **type**="entrance modifier">Enter Latrocinio disguised as an empiric</**stage**> <!-- Middleton: The Widow --> <**stage** **type**="location">At a window.</**stage**> <**stage** **rend**="inline" **type**="delivery">Aside.</**stage**> |
| **Example** | <**l**>Behold. <**stage** **n**="\*" **place**="margin">Here the vp<**lb**/>per part of the <**hi**>Scene</**hi**> open'd; when    straight appear'd a Heauen, and all the <**hi**>Pure Artes</**hi**> sitting on    two semi<**lb**/>circular ben<**lb**/>ches, one a<**lb**/>boue another: who sate thus till the rest of the  <**hi**>Prologue</**hi**> was spoken, which being ended, they descended in    order within the <**hi**>Scene,</**hi**> whiles the Musicke plaid</**stage**> Our  Poet knowing our free hearts</**l**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element stage {  [tei\_att.ascribed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.ascribed),  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.placement.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.placement),  attribute type  {  list  {  (  "setting"  | "entrance"  | "exit"  | "business"  | "novelistic"  | "delivery"  | "modifier"  | "location"  | "mixed"  )\*  }  }?,  [tei\_macro.specialPara](#TEI.tei_macro.specialPara)} |

## <stdVals>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<stdVals>** (standard values) specifies the format used when standardized date or number values are supplied. [[2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD53) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.editorialDeclPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** editorialDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab |
| **Example** | <**stdVals**>  <**p**>All integer numbers are left-filled with zeroes to 8 digits.</**p**> </**stdVals**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.pLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element stdVals {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+ } |

## <street>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<street>** contains a full street address including any name or number identifying a building as well as the name of the street or route on which it is located. [[3.5.2. Addresses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAD)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.addrPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | The order and presentation of house names and numbers and street names, etc., may vary considerably in different countries. The encoding should reflect the order which is appropriate in the country concerned. |
| **Example** | <**street**>via della Faggiola, 36</**street**> |
| **Example** | <**street**>  <**name**>Duntaggin</**name**>, 110 Southmoor Road </**street**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element street { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq) } |

## <string>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<string>** (string value) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which contains a string. [[18.3. Other Atomic Feature Values](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FSSY)] | |
| **Module** | iso-fs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat) |
| **Member of** | model.featureVal.single |
| **Contained by** | **iso-fs:** f fvLib vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vRange |
| **May contain** | **gaiji:** g  character data |
| **Example** | <**f** **name**="greeting">  <**string**>Hello, world!</**string**> </**f**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element string {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datcat.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datcat),  [tei\_macro.xtext](#TEI.tei_macro.xtext)} |

## <styleDefDecl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<styleDefDecl>** (style definition language declaration) specifies the name of the formal language in which style or renditional information is supplied elsewhere in the document. The specific version of the scheme may also be supplied. [[2.3.5. The Default Style Definition Language Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD57-1a)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) att.styleDef (@scheme, @schemeVersion) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab |
| **Example** | <**styleDefDecl** **scheme**="css"  **schemeVersion**="2.1"/> <!-- ... --> <**tagsDecl**>  <**rendition** **xml:id**="boldface">font-weight: bold;</**rendition**>  <**rendition** **xml:id**="italicstyle">font-style: italic;</**rendition**> </**tagsDecl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.pLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element styleDefDecl {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  [tei\_att.styleDef.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.styleDef),  [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)\* } |

## <symbol>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<symbol>** (symbolic value) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which contains one of a finite list of symbols. [[18.3. Other Atomic Feature Values](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FSSY)] | |
| **Module** | iso-fs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **value** | supplies a symbolic value for the feature, one of a finite list that may be specified in a feature declaration.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [teidata.word](#teidata.word) | | |
| **Member of** | model.featureVal.single |
| **Contained by** | **iso-fs:** f fvLib vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vRange |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Example** | <**f** **name**="gender">  <**symbol** **value**="feminine"/> </**f**> |
| **Content model** | <content> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element symbol {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datcat.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datcat),  attribute value { text },  empty } |

## <tagUsage>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<tagUsage>** documents the usage of a specific element within a specified document. [[2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD57)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **gi** | (generic identifier) specifies the name (generic identifier) of the element indicated by the tag, within the namespace indicated by the parent <namespace> element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [teidata.name](#teidata.name) | | | **occurs** | specifies the number of occurrences of this element within the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | [teidata.count](#teidata.count) | | | **withId** | (with unique identifier) specifies the number of occurrences of this element within the text which bear a distinct value for the global *@xml:id* attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | [teidata.count](#teidata.count) | | |
| **Contained by** | **header:** namespace |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title  **header:** biblFull idno  character data |
| **Example** | <**tagsDecl** **partial**="true">  <**rendition** **scheme**="css"   **selector**="foreign hi" **xml:id**="it"> font-style: italic; </**rendition**> <!-- ... -->  <**namespace** **name**="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">   <**tagUsage** **gi**="hi" **occurs**="28" **withId**="2"> Used to mark English words italicized in the copy text.</**tagUsage**>   <**tagUsage** **gi**="foreign">Used to mark non-English words in the copy text.</**tagUsage**> <!-- ... -->  </**namespace**> </**tagsDecl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element tagUsage {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute gi { text },  attribute occurs { text }?,  attribute withId { text }?,  [tei\_macro.limitedContent](#TEI.tei_macro.limitedContent)} |

## <tagsDecl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<tagsDecl>** (tagging declaration) provides detailed information about the tagging applied to a document. [[2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD57) [2.3. The Encoding Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **partial** | indicates whether the element types listed exhaustively include all those found within <text>, or represent only a subset.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | [teidata.truthValue](#teidata.truthValue) | | **Note** | TEI recommended practice is to specify this attribute. When the <tagUsage> elements inside <tagsDecl> are used to list each of the element types in the associated <text>, the value should be given as false. When the <tagUsage> elements inside <tagsDecl> are used to provide usage information or default renditions for only a subset of the elements types within the associated <text>, the value should be true. | | |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **header:** namespace rendition |
| **Example** | <**tagsDecl** **partial**="true">  <**rendition** **scheme**="css"   **selector**="emph hi name title" **xml:id**="rend-it">font-style: italic;</**rendition**>  <**namespace** **name**="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">   <**tagUsage** **gi**="hi" **occurs**="467"/>   <**tagUsage** **gi**="title" **occurs**="45"/>  </**namespace**>  <**namespace** **name**="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook">   <**tagUsage** **gi**="para" **occurs**="10"/>  </**namespace**> </**tagsDecl**>  If the *@partial* attribute were not specified here, the implication would be that the document in question contains only <hi>, <title>, and <para> elements. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="rendition"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="namespace"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element tagsDecl {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute partial { text }?,  ( [tei\_rendition](#TEI.tei_rendition)\*, [tei\_namespace](#TEI.tei_namespace)\* ) } |

## <taxonomy>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<taxonomy>** defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy. [[2.3.7. The Classification Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD55)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** classDecl taxonomy |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct desc gloss listBibl  **header:** biblFull category taxonomy |
| **Note** | Nested taxonomies are common in many fields, so the <taxonomy> element can be nested. |
| **Example** | <**taxonomy** **xml:id**="tax.b">  <**bibl**>Brown Corpus</**bibl**>  <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a">   <**catDesc**>Press Reportage</**catDesc**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a1">    <**catDesc**>Daily</**catDesc**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a2">    <**catDesc**>Sunday</**catDesc**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a3">    <**catDesc**>National</**catDesc**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a4">    <**catDesc**>Provincial</**catDesc**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a5">    <**catDesc**>Political</**catDesc**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a6">    <**catDesc**>Sports</**catDesc**>   </**category**>  </**category**>  <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.d">   <**catDesc**>Religion</**catDesc**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.d1">    <**catDesc**>Books</**catDesc**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.d2">    <**catDesc**>Periodicals and tracts</**catDesc**>   </**category**>  </**category**> </**taxonomy**> |
| **Example** | <**taxonomy**>  <**category** **xml:id**="literature">   <**catDesc**>Literature</**catDesc**>   <**category** **xml:id**="poetry">    <**catDesc**>Poetry</**catDesc**>    <**category** **xml:id**="sonnet">     <**catDesc**>Sonnet</**catDesc**>     <**category** **xml:id**="shakesSonnet">      <**catDesc**>Shakespearean Sonnet</**catDesc**>     </**category**>     <**category** **xml:id**="petraSonnet">      <**catDesc**>Petrarchan Sonnet</**catDesc**>     </**category**>    </**category**>    <**category** **xml:id**="haiku">     <**catDesc**>Haiku</**catDesc**>    </**category**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="drama">    <**catDesc**>Drama</**catDesc**>   </**category**>  </**category**>  <**category** **xml:id**="meter">   <**catDesc**>Metrical Categories</**catDesc**>   <**category** **xml:id**="feet">    <**catDesc**>Metrical Feet</**catDesc**>    <**category** **xml:id**="iambic">     <**catDesc**>Iambic</**catDesc**>    </**category**>    <**category** **xml:id**="trochaic">     <**catDesc**>trochaic</**catDesc**>    </**category**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="feetNumber">    <**catDesc**>Number of feet</**catDesc**>    <**category** **xml:id**="pentameter">     <**catDesc**>>Pentameter</**catDesc**>    </**category**>    <**category** **xml:id**="tetrameter">     <**catDesc**>>Tetrameter</**catDesc**>    </**category**>   </**category**>  </**category**> </**taxonomy**> <!-- elsewhere in document --> <**lg** **ana**="#shakesSonnet #iambic #pentameter">  <**l**>Shall I compare thee to a summer's day</**l**> <!-- ... --> </**lg**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <alternate>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="1">     <elementRef key="category"/>     <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>    </alternate>    <sequence>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="1">      <classRef key="model.glossLike"/>      <classRef key="model.descLike"/>     </alternate>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <elementRef key="category"/>      <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>   </alternate>   <sequence>    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <elementRef key="category"/>     <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element taxonomy {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  (  (  ( [tei\_category](#TEI.tei_category) | [tei\_taxonomy](#TEI.tei_taxonomy) )+  | (  ( [tei\_model.glossLike](#TEI.tei_model.glossLike) | [tei\_model.descLike](#TEI.tei_model.descLike) )+,  ( [tei\_category](#TEI.tei_category) | [tei\_taxonomy](#TEI.tei_taxonomy) )\*  )  )  | ( [tei\_model.biblLike](#TEI.tei_model.biblLike), ( [tei\_category](#TEI.tei_category) | [tei\_taxonomy](#TEI.tei_taxonomy) )\* )  ) } |

## <teiCorpus>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<teiCorpus>** contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more <TEI> elements, each containing a single text header and a text. [[4. Default Text Structure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS) [15.1. Varieties of Composite Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **version** | The version of the TEI scheme   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.version](#teidata.version) | | **Default** | 5.0 | | |
| **Contained by** | **core:** teiCorpus |
| **May contain** | **core:** teiCorpus  **header:** teiHeader  **iso-fs:** fsdDecl  **textstructure:** TEI text |
| **Note** | Must contain one TEI header for the corpus, and a series of <TEI> elements, one for each text.  This element is mandatory when applicable. |
| **Example** | <**teiCorpus** **version**="5.2" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  <**teiHeader**> <!-- header for corpus -->  </**teiHeader**>  <**TEI**>   <**teiHeader**> <!-- header for first text -->   </**teiHeader**>   <**text**> <!-- content of first text -->   </**text**>  </**TEI**>  <**TEI**>   <**teiHeader**> <!-- header for second text -->   </**teiHeader**>   <**text**> <!-- content of second text -->   </**text**>  </**TEI**> <!-- more TEI elements here --> </**teiCorpus**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>   <alternate>    <sequence>     <classRef key="model.resourceLike"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <elementRef key="TEI"/>      <elementRef key="teiCorpus"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="1">     <elementRef key="TEI"/>     <elementRef key="teiCorpus"/>    </alternate>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element teiCorpus {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute version { text }?,  (  [tei\_teiHeader](#TEI.tei_teiHeader),  (  ( [tei\_model.resourceLike](#TEI.tei_model.resourceLike)+, ( [tei\_TEI](#TEI.tei_TEI) | [tei\_teiCorpus](#TEI.tei_teiCorpus) )\* )  | ( [tei\_TEI](#TEI.tei_TEI) | [tei\_teiCorpus](#TEI.tei_teiCorpus) )+  )  ) } |

## <teiHeader>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<teiHeader>** (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources. [[2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11) [15.1. Varieties of Composite Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** teiCorpus  **textstructure:** TEI |
| **May contain** | **header:** encodingDesc fileDesc profileDesc revisionDesc xenoData |
| **Note** | One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document. |
| **Example** | <**teiHeader**>  <**fileDesc**>   <**titleStmt**>    <**title**>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</**title**>    <**author**>Shakespeare, William (1564–1616)</**author**>    <**respStmt**>     <**resp**>Originally prepared by</**resp**>     <**name**>Trevor Howard-Hill</**name**>    </**respStmt**>    <**respStmt**>     <**resp**>Revised and edited by</**resp**>     <**name**>Christine Avern-Carr</**name**>    </**respStmt**>   </**titleStmt**>   <**publicationStmt**>    <**distributor**>Oxford Text Archive</**distributor**>    <**address**>     <**addrLine**>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</**addrLine**>    </**address**>    <**idno** **type**="OTA">119</**idno**>    <**availability**>     <**p**>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</**p**>    </**availability**>    <**date** **when**="1968">1968</**date**>   </**publicationStmt**>   <**sourceDesc**>    <**bibl**>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton Facsimile,        1968)</**bibl**>   </**sourceDesc**>  </**fileDesc**>  <**encodingDesc**>   <**projectDesc**>    <**p**>Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of old-spelling        concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and revised for use during the        editing of the new Oxford Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).</**p**>   </**projectDesc**>   <**editorialDecl**>    <**correction**>     <**p**>Turned letters are silently corrected.</**p**>    </**correction**>    <**normalization**>     <**p**>Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s and ligatured          forms are not encoded.</**p**>    </**normalization**>   </**editorialDecl**>   <**refsDecl** **xml:id**="ASLREF">    <**cRefPattern** **matchPattern**="(\S+) ([^.]+)\.(.\*)"     **replacementPattern**="#xpath(//div1[@n='$1']/div2/[@n='$2']//lb[@n='$3'])">     <**p**>A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse order as that          listed here: <**list**>       <**item**>the <**att**>n</**att**> value of the preceding <**gi**>lb</**gi**>       </**item**>       <**item**>a period</**item**>       <**item**>the <**att**>n</**att**> value of the ancestor <**gi**>div2</**gi**>       </**item**>       <**item**>a space</**item**>       <**item**>the <**att**>n</**att**> value of the parent <**gi**>div1</**gi**>       </**item**>      </**list**>     </**p**>    </**cRefPattern**>   </**refsDecl**>  </**encodingDesc**>  <**revisionDesc**>   <**list**>    <**item**>     <**date** **when**="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</**date**> Last checked by CAC</**item**>    <**item**>     <**date** **when**="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</**date**> LB made new file</**item**>   </**list**>  </**revisionDesc**> </**teiHeader**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="fileDesc"/>   <classRef key="model.teiHeaderPart"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="revisionDesc"    minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element teiHeader {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  ( [tei\_fileDesc](#TEI.tei_fileDesc), [tei\_model.teiHeaderPart](#TEI.tei_model.teiHeaderPart)\*, [tei\_revisionDesc](#TEI.tei_revisionDesc)? ) } |

## <term>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<term>** contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term. [[3.3.4. Terms, Glosses, Equivalents, and Descriptions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQU)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.cReferencing (@cRef) |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s span  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi index item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl keywords language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | When this element appears within an <index> element, it is understood to supply the form under which an index entry is to be made for that location. Elsewhere, it is understood simply to indicate that its content is to be regarded as a technical or specialised term. It may be associated with a <gloss> element by means of its *@ref* attribute; alternatively a <gloss> element may point to a <term> element by means of its *@target* attribute.  In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The <term> element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the <term> element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion.  As with other members of the att.canonical class, instances of this element occuring in a text may be associated with a canonical definition, either by means of a URI (using the *@ref* attribute), or by means of some system-specific code value (using the *@key* attribute). Because the mutually exclusive *@target* and *@cRef* attributes overlap with the function of the *@ref* attribute, they are deprecated and may be removed at a subsequent release. |
| **Example** | A computational device that infers structure  from grammatical strings of words is known as a <**term**>parser</**term**>, and much of the history  of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers. |
| **Example** | We may define <**term** **rend**="sc" **xml:id**="TDPV1">discoursal point of view</**term**> as  <**gloss** **target**="#TDPV1">the relationship, expressed  through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the  fiction.</**gloss**> |
| **Example** | We may define <**term** **ref**="#TDPV2" **rend**="sc">discoursal point of view</**term**> as  <**gloss** **xml:id**="TDPV2">the relationship, expressed  through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the  fiction.</**gloss**> |
| **Example** | We discuss Leech's concept of <**term** **ref**="myGlossary.xml#TDPV2" **rend**="sc">discoursal point of view</**term**> below. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element term {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declaring),  [tei\_att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.pointing),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.canonical),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  [tei\_att.cReferencing.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.cReferencing),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <text>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<text>** contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [[4. Default Text Structure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS) [15.1. Varieties of Composite Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.resourceLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** teiCorpus  **textstructure:** TEI group |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** cb gap index lb milestone note pb  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  **textstructure:** back body front group |
| **Note** | This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose. |
| **Example** | <**text**>  <**front**>   <**docTitle**>    <**titlePart**>Autumn Haze</**titlePart**>   </**docTitle**>  </**front**>  <**body**>   <**l**>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</**l**>   <**l**>That settles softly down upon the water?</**l**>  </**body**> </**text**> |
| **Example** | The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:  <**text**>  <**front**> <!-- front matter for the whole group -->  </**front**>  <**group**>   <**text**> <!-- first text -->   </**text**>   <**text**> <!-- second text -->   </**text**>  </**group**> </**text**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.global"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="front"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>   <alternate>    <elementRef key="body"/>    <elementRef key="group"/>   </alternate>   <classRef key="model.global"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="back"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element text {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declaring),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.written.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.written),  (  [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\*,  ( [tei\_front](#TEI.tei_front), [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\* )?,  ( [tei\_body](#TEI.tei_body) | [tei\_group](#TEI.tei_group) ),  [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\*,  ( [tei\_back](#TEI.tei_back), [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\* )?  ) } |

## <textClass>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<textClass>** (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc. [[2.4.3. The Text Classification](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD43)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.profileDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** profileDesc |
| **May contain** | **header:** catRef classCode keywords |
| **Example** | <**taxonomy**>  <**category** **xml:id**="acprose">   <**catDesc**>Academic prose</**catDesc**>  </**category**> <!-- other categories here --> </**taxonomy**> <!-- ... --> <**textClass**>  <**catRef** **target**="#acprose"/>  <**classCode** **scheme**="http://www.udcc.org">001.9</**classCode**>  <**keywords** **scheme**="http://authorities.loc.gov">   <**list**>    <**item**>End of the world</**item**>    <**item**>History - philosophy</**item**>   </**list**>  </**keywords**> </**textClass**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <elementRef key="classCode"/>   <elementRef key="catRef"/>   <elementRef key="keywords"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element textClass {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  ( [tei\_classCode](#TEI.tei_classCode) | [tei\_catRef](#TEI.tei_catRef) | [tei\_keywords](#TEI.tei_keywords) )\* } |

## <textDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<textDesc>** (text description) provides a description of a text in terms of its situational parameters. [[15.2.1. The Text Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHTD)] | |
| **Module** | corpus |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.catDescPart model.profileDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** catDesc profileDesc |
| **May contain** | **corpus:** channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction preparedness purpose |
| **Example** | <**textDesc** **n**="Informal domestic conversation">  <**channel** **mode**="s"/>  <**constitution** **type**="single"/>  <**derivation** **type**="original"/>  <**domain** **type**="domestic"/>  <**factuality** **type**="mixed"/>  <**interaction** **active**="plural"   **passive**="many" **type**="complete"/>  <**preparedness** **type**="spontaneous"/>  <**purpose** **degree**="high" **type**="entertain"/>  <**purpose** **degree**="medium" **type**="inform"/> </**textDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef expand="sequence"    key="model.textDescPart"/>   <elementRef key="purpose"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element textDesc {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  (  [tei\_channel](#TEI.tei_channel),  [tei\_constitution](#TEI.tei_constitution),  [tei\_derivation](#TEI.tei_derivation),  [tei\_domain](#TEI.tei_domain),  [tei\_factuality](#TEI.tei_factuality),  [tei\_interaction](#TEI.tei_interaction),  [tei\_preparedness](#TEI.tei_preparedness),  [tei\_purpose](#TEI.tei_purpose)+  ) } |

## <textLang>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<textLang>** (text language) describes the languages and writing systems identified within the bibliographic work being described, rather than its description. [[3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI) [10.6.6. Languages and Writing Systems](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/MS.html#mslangs)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **mainLang** | (main language) supplies a code which identifies the chief language used in the bibliographic work.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.language](#teidata.language) | | | **otherLangs** | (other languages) one or more codes identifying any other languages used in the bibliographic work.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 0–∞ occurrences of [teidata.language](#teidata.language) separated by whitespace | | |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** analytic bibl monogr series |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | This element should not be used to document the languages or writing systems used for the bibliographic or manuscript description itself: as for all other TEI elements, such information should be provided by means of the global *@xml:lang* attribute attached to the element containing the description.  In all cases, languages should be identified by means of a standardized ‘language tag’ generated according to [BCP 47](https://tools.ietf.org/html/bcp47). Additional documentation for the language may be provided by a <language> element in the TEI Header. |
| **Example** | <**textLang** **mainLang**="en" **otherLangs**="la"> Predominantly in English with Latin  glosses</**textLang**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element textLang {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute mainLang { text }?,  attribute otherLangs { list { \* } }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <time>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<time>** contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format. [[3.5.4. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.dateLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s span  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose setting  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | As he sat smiling, the  quarter struck — <**time** **when**="11:45:00">the quarter to twelve</**time**>. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element time {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  ( text | [tei\_model.gLike](#TEI.tei_model.gLike) | [tei\_model.phrase](#TEI.tei_model.phrase) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\* } |

## <timeline>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<timeline>** provides a set of ordered points in time which can be linked to elements of a spoken text to create a temporal alignment of that text. [[16.4.2. Placing Synchronous Events in Time](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASYMP)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **origin** | designates the origin of the timeline, i.e. the time at which it begins.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | **Note** | If this attribute is not supplied, the implication is that the time of origin is not known. If it is supplied, it must point either to one of the <when> elements in its content, or to another <timeline> element. | | | **unit** | specifies the unit of time corresponding to the *@interval* value of the timeline or of its constituent points in time.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Suggested values include:** | **d** (days)  **h** (hours)  **min** (minutes)  **s** (seconds)  **ms** (milliseconds) | | | **interval** | specifies a time interval either as a positive integral value or using one of a set of predefined codes.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.interval](#teidata.interval) | | **Note** | The value irregular indicates uncertainty about all the intervals in the timeline; the value regular indicates that all the intervals are evenly spaced, but the size of the intervals is not known; numeric values indicate evenly spaced values of the size specified. If individual points in time in the timeline are given different values for the *@interval* attribute, those values locally override the value given in the timeline. | | |
| **Member of** | model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl m phr s span w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **linking:** when |
| **Example** | <**timeline** **unit**="ms" **xml:id**="TL01">  <**when** **absolute**="11:30:00" **xml:id**="TL-w0"/>  <**when** **interval**="unknown" **since**="#TL-w0"   **xml:id**="TL-w1"/>  <**when** **interval**="100" **since**="#TL-w1"   **xml:id**="TL-w2"/>  <**when** **interval**="200" **since**="#TL-w2"   **xml:id**="TL-w3"/>  <**when** **interval**="150" **since**="#TL-w3"   **xml:id**="TL-w4"/>  <**when** **interval**="250" **since**="#TL-w4"   **xml:id**="TL-w5"/>  <**when** **interval**="100" **since**="#TL-w5"   **xml:id**="TL-w6"/> </**timeline**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <elementRef key="when"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element timeline {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute origin { text }?,  attribute unit { "d" | "h" | "min" | "s" | "ms" }?,  attribute interval { text }?,  [tei\_when](#TEI.tei_when)+ } |

## <title>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<title>** contains a title for any kind of work. [[3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR) [2.2.1. The Title Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | classifies the title according to some convenient typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Sample values include:** | **main** main title  **sub** (subordinate) subtitle, title of part  **alt** (alternate) alternate title, often in another language, by which the work is also known  **short** abbreviated form of title  **desc** (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work functioning as a title | | **Note** | This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type; where such specialized processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be enclosed within a single <title> element. | | | **level** | indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **a** (analytic) the title applies to an analytic item, such as an article, poem, or other work published as part of a larger item.  **m** (monographic) the title applies to a monograph such as a book or other item considered to be a distinct publication, including single volumes of multi-volume works  **j** (journal) the title applies to any serial or periodical publication such as a journal, magazine, or newspaper  **s** (series) the title applies to a series of otherwise distinct publications such as a collection  **u** (unpublished) the title applies to any unpublished material (including theses and dissertations unless published by a commercial press) | | **Note** | The level of a title is sometimes implied by its context: for example, a title appearing directly within an <analytic> element is ipso facto of level ‘a’, and one appearing within a <series> element of level ‘s’. For this reason, the *@level* attribute is not required in contexts where its value can be unambiguously inferred. Where it is supplied in such contexts, its value should not contradict the value implied by its parent element. | | |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s span  **core:** abbr add addrLine analytic author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned monogr name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **corpus:** activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal rendition seriesStmt sponsor tagUsage titleStmt  **iso-fs:** fDescr fsDescr  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | The attributes *@key* and *@ref*, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title. |
| **Example** | <**title**>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of  a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK,  18–21 July 1989</**title**> |
| **Example** | <**title**>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable  edition</**title**> |
| **Example** | <**title** **type**="full">  <**title** **type**="main">Synthèse</**title**>  <**title** **type**="sub">an international journal for    epistemology, methodology and history of    science</**title**> </**title**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element title {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.canonical),  [tei\_att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  attribute type { text }?,  attribute level { "a" | "m" | "j" | "s" | "u" }?,  [tei\_macro.paraContent](#TEI.tei_macro.paraContent)} |

## <titlePage>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<titlePage>** (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | classifies the title page according to any convenient typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Note** | This attribute allows the same element to be used for volume title pages, series title pages, etc., as well as for the ‘main’ title page of a work. | | |
| **Member of** | model.frontPart |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** back front |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** span spanGrp  **core:** binaryObject cb gap graphic index lb milestone note pb  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  **textstructure:** byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle imprimatur titlePart |
| **Example** | <**titlePage**>  <**docTitle**>   <**titlePart** **type**="main">THOMAS OF Reading.</**titlePart**>   <**titlePart** **type**="alt">OR, The sixe worthy yeomen of the West.</**titlePart**>  </**docTitle**>  <**docEdition**>Now the fourth time corrected and enlarged</**docEdition**>  <**byline**>By T.D.</**byline**>  <**figure**>   <**head**>TP</**head**>   <**p**>Thou shalt labor till thou returne to duste</**p**>   <**figDesc**>Printers Ornament used by TP</**figDesc**>  </**figure**>  <**docImprint**>Printed at <**name** **type**="place">London</**name**> for <**name**>T.P.</**name**>   <**date**>1612.</**date**>  </**docImprint**> </**titlePage**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.global"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.titlepagePart"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.titlepagePart"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element titlePage {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute type { text }?,  (  [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\*,  [tei\_model.titlepagePart](#TEI.tei_model.titlepagePart),  ( [tei\_model.titlepagePart](#TEI.tei_model.titlepagePart) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\*  ) } |

## <titlePart>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<titlePart>** contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | specifies the role of this subdivision of the title.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Suggested values include:** | **main** main title of the work [Default]  **sub** (subordinate) subtitle of the work  **alt** (alternate) alternative title of the work  **short** abbreviated form of title  **desc** (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work | | |
| **Member of** | model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** back docTitle front titlePage |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**docTitle**>  <**titlePart** **type**="main">THE FORTUNES    AND MISFORTUNES Of the FAMOUS    Moll Flanders, &amp;c.  </**titlePart**>  <**titlePart** **type**="desc">Who was BORN in NEWGATE,    And during a Life of continu'd Variety for    Threescore Years, besides her Childhood, was    Twelve Year a <**hi**>Whore</**hi**>, five times a <**hi**>Wife</**hi**> (wherof    once to her own Brother) Twelve Year a <**hi**>Thief,</**hi**>    Eight Year a Transported <**hi**>Felon</**hi**> in <**hi**>Virginia</**hi**>,    at last grew <**hi**>Rich</**hi**>, liv'd <**hi**>Honest</**hi**>, and died a  <**hi**>Penitent</**hi**>.</**titlePart**> </**docTitle**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element titlePart {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute type { "main" | "sub" | "alt" | "short" | "desc" }?,  [tei\_macro.paraContent](#TEI.tei_macro.paraContent)} |

## <titleStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<titleStmt>** (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [[2.2.1. The Title Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21) [2.2. The File Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** biblFull fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** author editor meeting respStmt title  **header:** funder principal sponsor |
| **Example** | <**titleStmt**>  <**title**>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable transcription</**title**>  <**respStmt**>   <**resp**>compiled by</**resp**>   <**name**>P.J. Lucas</**name**>  </**respStmt**> </**titleStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="title"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <classRef key="model.respLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element titleStmt {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  ( [tei\_title](#TEI.tei_title)+, [tei\_model.respLike](#TEI.tei_model.respLike)\* ) } |

## <trailer>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<trailer>** contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text. [[4.2.4. Content of Textual Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSCO) [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.divBottomPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **textstructure:** back body div front group postscript |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**trailer**>Explicit pars tertia</**trailer**> |
| **Example** | <**trailer**>  <**l**>In stead of FINIS this advice <**hi**>I</**hi**> send,</**l**>  <**l**>Let Rogues and Thieves beware of <**lb**/>   <**hi**>Hamans</**hi**> END.</**l**> </**trailer**>  From EEBO A87070 |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <elementRef key="lg"/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.inter"/>   <classRef key="model.lLike"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element trailer {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  (  text  | [tei\_lg](#TEI.tei_lg) | [tei\_model.gLike](#TEI.tei_model.gLike) | [tei\_model.phrase](#TEI.tei_model.phrase) | [tei\_model.inter](#TEI.tei_model.inter) | [tei\_model.lLike](#TEI.tei_model.lLike) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\* } |

## <unclear>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<unclear>** contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source. [[11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHDA) [3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDADD)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) )   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **reason** | indicates why the material is hard to transcribe.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.word](#teidata.word) separated by whitespace | | <**div**>  <**head**>Rx</**head**>  <**p**>500 mg <**unclear** **reason**="illegible">placebo</**unclear**>  </**p**> </**div**> | | | **Note** | One or more words may be used to describe the reason; usually each word will refer to a single cause. Typical examples might thus include faded, illegible, eccentric\_ductusbackground\_noise, passing\_truck,etc. | | | **hand** | Where the difficulty in transcription arises from action (partial deletion, etc.) assignable to an identifiable hand, signifies the hand responsible for the action.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | [Deprecated](http://www.tei-c.org/Activities/Council/Working/tcw27.xml) | will be removed on 2017-08-01 | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | | **agent** | Where the difficulty in transcription arises from damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Sample values include:** | **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges  **mildew** damage results from mildew on the leaf surface  **smoke** damage results from smoke | | |
| **Member of** | model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl pc phr s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **header:** change distributor edition extent geoDecl licence  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c cl m pc phr s span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **gaiji:** g  **header:** biblFull idno  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Note** | The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty, uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter [21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CE.html#CE).  The <damage>, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section [11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHCOMB) for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.  The *@hand* attribute points to a definition of the hand concerned, as further discussed in section [11.3.2.1. Document Hands](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHDH). |
| **Example** | <**u**> ...and then <**unclear** **reason**="background-noise">Nathalie</**unclear**> said ... </**u**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element unclear {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  attribute reason { list { + } }?,  attribute hand { text }?,  attribute agent { text }?,  [tei\_macro.paraContent](#TEI.tei_macro.paraContent)} |

## <unicodeName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<unicodeName>** (unicode property name) contains the name of a registered Unicode normative or informative property. [[5.2.1. Character Properties](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/WD.html#ucsprops)] | |
| **Module** | gaiji |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **version** | specifies the version number of the Unicode Standard in which this property name is defined.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.version](#teidata.version) | | |
| **Contained by** | **gaiji:** charProp |
| **May contain** | Character data only |
| **Note** | A definitive list of current Unicode property names is provided in The Unicode Standard. |
| **Example** | <**unicodeName**>character-decomposition-mapping</**unicodeName**> <**unicodeName**>general-category</**unicodeName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element unicodeName {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute version { text }?,  text } |

## <vAlt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<vAlt>** (value alternation) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which contains a set of values, only one of which can be valid. [[18.8.1. Alternation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FVALT)] | |
| **Module** | iso-fs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.featureVal.single |
| **Contained by** | **iso-fs:** f fvLib vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vRange |
| **May contain** | **iso-fs:** binary default fs numeric string symbol vAlt vColl vLabel |
| **Example** | <**f** **name**="gender">  <**vAlt**>   <**symbol** **value**="masculine"/>   <**symbol** **value**="neuter"/>   <**symbol** **value**="feminine"/>  </**vAlt**> </**f**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.featureVal"/>   <classRef key="model.featureVal"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element vAlt {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  ( [tei\_model.featureVal](#TEI.tei_model.featureVal), [tei\_model.featureVal](#TEI.tei_model.featureVal)+ ) } |

## <vColl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<vColl>** (collection of values) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which contains multiple values organized as a set, bag, or list. [[18.7. Collections as Complex Feature Values](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FSSS)] | |
| **Module** | iso-fs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **org** | (organization) indicates organization of given value or values as set, bag or list.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **set** indicates that the given values are organized as a set.  **bag** indicates that the given values are organized as a bag (multiset).  **list** indicates that the given values are organized as a list. | | |
| **Member of** | model.featureVal.complex |
| **Contained by** | **iso-fs:** f fvLib vAlt vDefault vLabel vRange |
| **May contain** | **iso-fs:** binary default fs numeric string symbol vAlt vLabel |
| **Example** | <**f** **name**="name">  <**vColl**>   <**string**>Jean</**string**>   <**string**>Luc</**string**>   <**string**>Godard</**string**>  </**vColl**> </**f**> |
| **Example** | <**fs**>  <**f** **name**="lex">   <**symbol** **value**="auxquels"/>  </**f**>  <**f** **name**="maf">   <**vColl** **org**="list">    <**fs**>     <**f** **name**="cat">      <**symbol** **value**="prep"/>     </**f**>    </**fs**>    <**fs**>     <**f** **name**="cat">      <**symbol** **value**="pronoun"/>     </**f**>     <**f** **name**="kind">      <**symbol** **value**="rel"/>     </**f**>     <**f** **name**="num">      <**symbol** **value**="pl"/>     </**f**>     <**f** **name**="gender">      <**symbol** **value**="masc"/>     </**f**>    </**fs**>   </**vColl**>  </**f**> </**fs**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <elementRef key="fs"/>   <classRef key="model.featureVal.single"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element vColl {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute org { "set" | "bag" | "list" }?,  ( [tei\_fs](#TEI.tei_fs) | [tei\_model.featureVal.single](#TEI.tei_model.featureVal.single) )\* } |

## <vDefault>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<vDefault>** (value default) declares the default value to be supplied when a feature structure does not contain an instance of <f> for this name; if unconditional, it is specified as one (or, depending on the value of the *@org* attribute of the enclosing <fDecl>) more <fs> elements or primitive values; if conditional, it is specified as one or more <if> elements; if no default is specified, or no condition matches, the value none is assumed. [[18.11. Feature System Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FD)] | |
| **Module** | iso-fs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **iso-fs:** fDecl |
| **May contain** | **iso-fs:** binary default fs numeric string symbol vAlt vColl vLabel |
| **Note** | May contain a legal feature value, or a series of <if> elements. |
| **Example** | <**fDecl** **name**="INV">  <**fDescr**>inverted sentence</**fDescr**>  <**vRange**>   <**vAlt**>    <**binary** **value**="true"/>    <**binary** **value**="false"/>   </**vAlt**>  </**vRange**>  <**vDefault**>   <**binary** **value**="false"/>  </**vDefault**> </**fDecl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.featureVal"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <elementRef key="if"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element vDefault { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), ( [tei\_model.featureVal](#TEI.tei_model.featureVal)+ | [if](#TEI.if)+ ) } |

## <vLabel>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<vLabel>** (value label) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which appears at more than one point in a feature structure. [[18.6. Re-entrant Feature Structures](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FSVAR)] | |
| **Module** | iso-fs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **name** | supplies a name identifying the sharing point.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [teidata.word](#teidata.word) | | |
| **Member of** | model.featureVal.single |
| **Contained by** | **iso-fs:** f fvLib vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vRange |
| **May contain** | **iso-fs:** binary default fs numeric string symbol vAlt vColl vLabel |
| **Example** | <**fs**>  <**f** **name**="nominal">   <**fs**>    <**f** **name**="nm-num">     <**vLabel** **name**="L1">      <**symbol** **value**="singular"/>     </**vLabel**>    </**f**> <!-- other nominal features -->   </**fs**>  </**f**>  <**f** **name**="verbal">   <**fs**>    <**f** **name**="vb-num">     <**vLabel** **name**="L1"/>    </**f**>   </**fs**> <!-- other verbal features -->  </**f**> </**fs**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.featureVal"   minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element vLabel {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute name { text },  [tei\_model.featureVal](#TEI.tei_model.featureVal)? } |

## <vRange>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<vRange>** (value range) defines the range of allowed values for a feature, in the form of an <fs>, <vAlt>, or primitive value; for the value of an <f> to be valid, it must be subsumed by the specified range; if the <f> contains multiple values (as sanctioned by the *@org* attribute), then each value must be subsumed by the <vRange>. [[18.11. Feature System Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FD)] | |
| **Module** | iso-fs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **iso-fs:** fDecl |
| **May contain** | **iso-fs:** binary default fs numeric string symbol vAlt vColl vLabel |
| **Note** | May contain any legal feature-value specification. |
| **Example** | <**fDecl** **name**="INV">  <**fDescr**>inverted sentence</**fDescr**>  <**vRange**>   <**vAlt**>    <**binary** **value**="true"/>    <**binary** **value**="false"/>   </**vAlt**>  </**vRange**>  <**vDefault**>   <**binary** **value**="false"/>  </**vDefault**> </**fDecl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.featureVal"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element vRange { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_model.featureVal](#TEI.tei_model.featureVal) } |

## <value>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<value>** contains a single value for some property, attribute, or other analysis. [[5.2.1. Character Properties](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/WD.html#ucsprops)] | |
| **Module** | gaiji |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **gaiji:** charProp |
| **May contain** | **gaiji:** g  character data |
| **Example** | <**value**>unknown</**value**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element value { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_macro.xtext](#TEI.tei_macro.xtext) } |

## <w>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<w>** (word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word. [[17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILC)] | |
| **Module** | analysis |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **lemma** | provides a lemma for the word, such as an uninflected dictionary entry form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.text](#teidata.text) | | | **lemmaRef** | provides a pointer to a definition of the lemma for the word, for example in an online lexicon.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | |
| **Member of** | model.segLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** cl phr s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear  **header:** change distributor edition extent geoDecl licence  **linking:** ab seg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c m pc span spanGrp w  **core:** abbr add cb choice corr del expan gap hi index lb milestone note orig pb reg sic unclear  **gaiji:** g  **iso-fs:** fLib fs fvLib  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  character data |
| **Example** | <**w** **lemma**="hit"  **lemmaRef**="http://www.example.com/lexicon/hitvb.xml" **type**="verb">hitt<**m** **type**="suffix">ing</**m**> </**w**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <elementRef key="seg"/>   <elementRef key="w"/>   <elementRef key="m"/>   <elementRef key="c"/>   <elementRef key="pc"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>   <classRef key="model.lPart"/>   <classRef key="model.hiLike"/>   <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element w {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.segLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.segLike),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute lemma { text }?,  attribute lemmaRef { text }?,  (  text  | [tei\_model.gLike](#TEI.tei_model.gLike) | [tei\_seg](#TEI.tei_seg) | [tei\_w](#TEI.tei_w) | [tei\_m](#TEI.tei_m) | [tei\_c](#TEI.tei_c) | [tei\_pc](#TEI.tei_pc) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) | [tei\_model.lPart](#TEI.tei_model.lPart) | [tei\_model.hiLike](#TEI.tei_model.hiLike) | [tei\_model.pPart.edit](#TEI.tei_model.pPart.edit) )\* } |

## <when>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<when>** indicates a point in time either relative to other elements in the same timeline tag, or absolutely. [[16.4.2. Placing Synchronous Events in Time](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASYMP)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **absolute** | supplies an absolute value for the time.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.temporal.w3c](#teidata.temporal.w3c) | | **Note** | This attribute should always be specified on a <when> element which serves as the target for the *@origin* attribute of a <timeLine>. | | | **unit** | specifies the unit of time in which the *@interval* value is expressed, if this is not inherited from the parent <timeline>.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Suggested values include:** | **d** (days)  **h** (hours)  **min** (minutes)  **s** (seconds)  **ms** (milliseconds) | | | **interval** | specifies a time interval either as a number or as one of the keywords defined by the datatype data.interval   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.interval](#teidata.interval) | | | **since** | identifies the reference point for determining the time of the current <when> element, which is obtained by adding the interval to the time of the reference point.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | **Note** | This attribute should point to another <when> element in the same <timeline>. If no value is supplied, and the *@absolute* attribute is also unspecified, then the reference point is understood to be the origin of the enclosing <timeline> tag. | | |
| **Contained by** | **linking:** timeline |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | On this element, the global *@xml:id* attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for this point in time. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence. |
| **Example** | <**when** **interval**="20" **since**="#w2" **xml:id**="TW3"/> |
| **Content model** | <content> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element when {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute absolute { text }?,  attribute unit { "d" | "h" | "min" | "s" | "ms" }?,  attribute interval { text }?,  attribute since { text }?,  empty } |

## <xenoData>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<xenoData>** (non-TEI metadata) provides a container element into which metadata in non-TEI formats may be placed. [[2.5. Non-TEI Metadata](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD9)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.teiHeaderPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | Character data only |
| **Example** | This example presumes that the prefix dc has been bound to the namespace http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/ and the prefix rdf is bound to the namespace http://www.w3.org/1999/02/22-rdf-syntax-ns#. Note: The *@about* attribute on the <rdf:Description> in this example gives a URI indicating the resource to which the metadata contained therein refer. The <rdf:Description> in the second <xenoData> block has a blank *@about*, meaning it is pointing at the *current* document, so the RDF is about the document within which it is contained, i.e. the TEI document containing the <xenoData> block. Similarly, any kind of relative URI may be used, including fragment identifiers (see <#SG-id>). Do note, however, that if the contents of the <xenoData> block are to be extracted and used elsewhere, any relative URIs will have to be resolved accordingly.  <**xenoData**    xmlns:dc="http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/"    xmlns:rdf="http://www.w3.org/1999/02/22-rdf-syntax-ns#">  <**rdf:RDF**>   <**rdf:Description** **rdf:about**="http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/606621663">    <**dc:title**>The description of a new world, called the blazing-world</**dc:title**>    <**dc:creator**>The Duchess of Newcastle</**dc:creator**>    <**dc:date**>1667</**dc:date**>    <**dc:identifier**>British Library, 8407.h.10</**dc:identifier**>    <**dc:subject**>utopian fiction</**dc:subject**>   </**rdf:Description**>  </**rdf:RDF**> </**xenoData**> <**xenoData**>  <**rdf:RDF**>   <**rdf:Description** **rdf:about**="">    <**dc:title**>The Description of a New World, Called the Blazing-World, 1668</**dc:title**>    <**dc:creator**>Cavendish, Margaret (Lucas), Duchess of Newcastle</**dc:creator**>    <**dc:publisher**>Women Writers Project</**dc:publisher**>    <**dc:date**>2002-02-12</**dc:date**>    <**dc:subject**>utopian fiction</**dc:subject**>   </**rdf:Description**>  </**rdf:RDF**> </**xenoData**> |
| **Example** | In this example, the prefix rdf is bound to the namespace http://www.w3.org/1999/02/22-rdf-syntax-ns#, the prefix dc is bound to the namespace http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/, and the prefix cc is bound to the namespace http://web.resource.org/cc/.  <**xenoData**    xmlns:cc="http://web.resource.org/cc/"    xmlns:dc="http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/"    xmlns:rdf="http://www.w3.org/1999/02/22-rdf-syntax-ns#">  <**rdf:RDF**>   <**cc:Work** **rdf:about**="">    <**dc:title**>Applied Software Project Management - review</**dc:title**>    <**dc:type** **rdf:resource**="http://purl.org/dc/dcmitype/Text"/>    <**dc:license** **rdf:resource**="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/uk/"/>   </**cc:Work**>   <**cc:License** **rdf:about**="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/uk/">    <**cc:permits** **rdf:resource**="http://web.resource.org/cc/Reproduction"/>    <**cc:permits** **rdf:resource**="http://web.resource.org/cc/Distribution"/>    <**cc:requires** **rdf:resource**="http://web.resource.org/cc/Notice"/>    <**cc:requires** **rdf:resource**="http://web.resource.org/cc/Attribution"/>    <**cc:permits** **rdf:resource**="http://web.resource.org/cc/DerivativeWorks"/>    <**cc:requires** **rdf:resource**="http://web.resource.org/cc/ShareAlike"/>   </**cc:License**>  </**rdf:RDF**> </**xenoData**> |
| **Example** | In this example, the prefix dc is again bound to the namespace http://www.openarchives.org/OAI/2.0/oai\_dc/, and the prefix oai\_dc is bound to the namespace http://www.openarchives.org/OAI/2.0/oai\_dc/.  <**xenoData**    xmlns:dc="http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/"    xmlns:oai\_dc="http://www.openarchives.org/OAI/2.0/oai\_dc/">  <**oai\_dc:dc**>   <**dc:title**>The colonial despatches of Vancouver Island and British      Columbia 1846-1871: 11566, CO 60/2, p. 291; received 13 November.      Trevelyan to Merivale (Permanent Under-Secretary)</**dc:title**>   <**dc:date**>1858-11-12</**dc:date**>   <**dc:creator**>Trevelyan</**dc:creator**>   <**dc:publisher**>University of Victoria Humanities Computing and Media      Centre, and UVic Libraries</**dc:publisher**>   <**dc:type**>InteractiveResource</**dc:type**>   <**dc:format**>application/xhtml+xml</**dc:format**>   <**dc:type**>text</**dc:type**>   <**dc:identifier**>http://bcgenesis.uvic.ca/getDoc.htm?id=B585TE13.scx</**dc:identifier**>   <**dc:rights**>This document is licensed under a Creative Commons …</**dc:rights**>   <**dc:language**>(SCHEME=ISO639) en</**dc:language**>   <**dc:source**>Transcribed from microfilm and/or original documents, and      marked up in TEI P5 XML. The interactive XHTML resource is generated      from the XHTML using XQuery and XSLT.</**dc:source**>   <**dc:source**>repository: CO</**dc:source**>   <**dc:source**>coNumber: 60</**dc:source**>   <**dc:source**>coVol: 2</**dc:source**>   <**dc:source**>page: 291</**dc:source**>   <**dc:source**>coRegistration: 11566</**dc:source**>   <**dc:source**>received: received 13 November</**dc:source**>   <**dc:subject**>Trevelyan, Sir Charles Edward</**dc:subject**>   <**dc:subject**>Merivale, Herman</**dc:subject**>   <**dc:subject**>Elliot, T. Frederick</**dc:subject**>   <**dc:subject**>Moody, Colonel Richard Clement</**dc:subject**>   <**dc:subject**>Lytton, Sir Edward George Earle Bulwer</**dc:subject**>   <**dc:subject**>Jadis, Vane</**dc:subject**>   <**dc:subject**>Carnarvon, Earl</**dc:subject**>   <**dc:subject**>British Columbia</**dc:subject**>   <**dc:description**>British Columbia correspondence: Public Offices      document (normally correspondence between government      departments)</**dc:description**>  </**oai\_dc:dc**> </**xenoData**> |
| **Example** | In this example, the prefix mods is bound to the namespace http://www.loc.gov/mods/v3.  <**xenoData**    xmlns:mods="http://www.loc.gov/mods/v3">  <**mods:mods**>   <**mods:titleInfo**>    <**mods:title**>Academic adaptation and cross-cultural        learning experiences of Chinese students at American        universities</**mods:title**>    <**mods:subTitle**>a narrative inquiry</**mods:subTitle**>   </**mods:titleInfo**>   <**mods:name** **authority**="local"    **type**="personal">    <**mods:namePart**/>    <**mods:role**>     <**mods:roleTerm** **authority**="marcrelator"      **type**="text">Author</**mods:roleTerm**>    </**mods:role**>    <**mods:affiliation**>Northeastern University</**mods:affiliation**>    <**mods:namePart** **type**="given">Hong</**mods:namePart**>    <**mods:namePart** **type**="family">Zhang</**mods:namePart**>   </**mods:name**>   <**mods:name** **authority**="local"    **type**="personal">    <**mods:namePart**/>    <**mods:role**>     <**mods:roleTerm** **authority**="local"      **type**="text">Advisor</**mods:roleTerm**>    </**mods:role**>    <**mods:namePart** **type**="given">Liliana</**mods:namePart**>    <**mods:namePart** **type**="family">Meneses</**mods:namePart**>   </**mods:name**>    <!-- ... -->   <**mods:typeOfResource**>text</**mods:typeOfResource**>   <**mods:genre**>doctoral theses</**mods:genre**>   <**mods:originInfo**>    <**mods:place**>     <**mods:placeTerm** **type**="text">Boston (Mass.)</**mods:placeTerm**>    </**mods:place**>    <**mods:publisher**>Northeastern University</**mods:publisher**>    <**mods:copyrightDate** **encoding**="w3cdtf"     **keyDate**="yes">2013</**mods:copyrightDate**>   </**mods:originInfo**>   <**mods:language**>    <**mods:languageTerm** **authority**="iso639-2b"     **type**="code">eng</**mods:languageTerm**>   </**mods:language**>   <**mods:physicalDescription**>    <**mods:form** **authority**="marcform">electronic</**mods:form**>    <**mods:digitalOrigin**>born digital</**mods:digitalOrigin**>   </**mods:physicalDescription**> <!-- ... -->  </**mods:mods**> </**xenoData**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <textNode/>   <anyElement/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element xenoData {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  ( text | [anyElement-xenoData](#TEI.anyElement-xenoData) ) } |

# Model classes

## model.addrPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.addrPart**   groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address. [[3.5.2. Addresses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAD)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | address |
| **Members** | model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name] [model.offsetLike](#TEI.model.offsetLike) model.placeStateLike [[model.placeNamePart](#TEI.model.placeNamePart)] idno rs] addrLine postBox postCode street |

## model.addressLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.addressLike**   groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [[1. The TEI Infrastructure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#ST)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.correspActionPart model.pPart.data |
| **Members** | address email |

## model.applicationLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.applicationLike**   groups elements used to record application-specific information about a document in its header. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | appInfo |
| **Members** | application |

## model.availabilityPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.availabilityPart**   groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statement [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | availability |
| **Members** | licence |

## model.biblLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.biblLike**   groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [[3.11. Bibliographic Citations and References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBI)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | cit listBibl model.inter relatedItem sourceDesc taxonomy |
| **Members** | bibl biblFull biblStruct listBibl |

## model.biblPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.biblPart**   groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [[3.11. Bibliographic Citations and References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBI)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl |
| **Members** | model.imprintPart [biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher] model.respLike [author editor funder meeting principal respStmt sponsor] availability bibl citedRange edition extent relatedItem series textLang |

## model.catDescPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.catDescPart**   groups component elements of the TEI header Category Description. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | catDesc |
| **Members** | textDesc |

## model.choicePart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.choicePart**   groups elements (other than <choice> itself) which can be used within a <choice> alternation. [[3.4. Simple Editorial Changes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | choice |
| **Members** | abbr corr expan orig reg seg sic unclear |

## model.common

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.common**   groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | body div postscript |
| **Members** | model.divPart [model.lLike [l] model.pLike [ab p] lg sp] model.inter [model.biblLike [bibl biblFull biblStruct listBibl] [model.egLike](#TEI.model.egLike) model.labelLike [desc label] model.listLike [list] [model.oddDecl](#TEI.model.oddDecl) model.qLike [model.quoteLike [cit quote] q said] model.stageLike [stage] ] |
| **Note** | This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions. |

## model.correspActionPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.correspActionPart**   groups elements which define the parts (usually names, dates and places) of one action related to the correspondence. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | correspAction |
| **Members** | model.addressLike [address email] model.dateLike [date time] model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name] [model.offsetLike](#TEI.model.offsetLike) model.placeStateLike [[model.placeNamePart](#TEI.model.placeNamePart)] idno rs] note |

## model.correspContextPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.correspContextPart**   groups elements which may appear as part of the correspContext element | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | correspContext |
| **Members** | model.pLike [ab p] model.ptrLike [ptr ref] note |

## model.correspDescPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.correspDescPart**   groups together metadata elements for describing correspondence | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | correspDesc |
| **Members** | correspAction correspContext note |

## model.dateLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.dateLike**   groups elements containing temporal expressions. [[3.5.4. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA) [13.3.6. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | imprint model.correspActionPart model.pPart.data setting |
| **Members** | date time |

## model.descLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.descLike**   groups elements which contain a description of their function. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | category char gap glyph graphic join media schemaRef taxonomy |
| **Members** | desc |

## model.divBottom

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divBottom**   groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | body div front group lg list |
| **Members** | model.divBottomPart [closer postscript signed trailer] model.divWrapper [byline dateline docAuthor docDate meeting salute] |

## model.divBottomPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divBottomPart**   groups elements which can occur only at the end of a text division. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | back model.divBottom postscript |
| **Members** | closer postscript signed trailer |

## model.divGenLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divGenLike**   groups elements used to represent a structural division which is generated rather than explicitly present in the source. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | body div |
| **Members** | divGen |

## model.divLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divLike**   groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | back body div front |
| **Members** | div |

## model.divPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divPart**   groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | macro.specialPara model.common |
| **Members** | model.lLike [l] model.pLike [ab p] lg sp |
| **Note** | Note that this element class does not include members of the model.inter class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items. |

## model.divTop

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divTop**   groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | body div group lg list |
| **Members** | model.divTopPart [model.headLike [head] opener signed] model.divWrapper [byline dateline docAuthor docDate meeting salute] |

## model.divTopPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divTopPart**   groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.divTop postscript |
| **Members** | model.headLike [head] opener signed |

## model.divWrapper

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divWrapper**   groups elements which can appear at either top or bottom of a textual division. [[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.divBottom model.divTop |
| **Members** | byline dateline docAuthor docDate meeting salute |

## model.editorialDeclPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.editorialDeclPart**   groups elements which may be used inside <editorialDecl> and appear multiple times. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | editorialDecl |
| **Members** | correction hyphenation interpretation normalization punctuation quotation segmentation stdVals |

## model.emphLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.emphLike**   groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [[3.3. Highlighting and Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQ)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase |
| **Members** | distinct emph foreign gloss mentioned soCalled term title |

## model.encodingDescPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.encodingDescPart**   groups elements which may be used inside <encodingDesc> and appear multiple times. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | encodingDesc |
| **Members** | appInfo charDecl classDecl editorialDecl fsdDecl geoDecl listPrefixDef projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl schemaRef styleDefDecl tagsDecl |

## model.featureVal

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.featureVal**   groups elements which represent feature values in feature structures. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | f fvLib vAlt vDefault vLabel vRange |
| **Members** | model.featureVal.complex [fs vColl] model.featureVal.single [binary default numeric string symbol vAlt vLabel] |

## model.featureVal.complex

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.featureVal.complex**   groups elements which express complex feature values in feature structures. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.featureVal |
| **Members** | fs vColl |

## model.featureVal.single

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.featureVal.single**   group elements used to represent atomic feature values in feature structures. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.featureVal vColl |
| **Members** | binary default numeric string symbol vAlt vLabel |

## model.frontPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.frontPart**   groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter. [[7.1. Front and Back Matter](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRFAB)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | back front |
| **Members** | [model.frontPart.drama](#TEI.model.frontPart.drama) divGen listBibl titlePage |

## model.gLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.gLike**   groups elements used to represent individual non-Unicode characters or glyphs. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl byline closer date dateline docImprint head idno l m macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara macro.xtext measureGrp opener pc series time trailer w |
| **Members** | g |

## model.global

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.global**   groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | address back bibl body byline cit closer date dateline div docImprint docTitle front group head imprint l lg list m macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara opener postscript series sp text time titlePage trailer w |
| **Members** | model.global.edit [gap] model.global.meta [alt altGrp fLib fs fvLib index join joinGrp link linkGrp span spanGrp timeline] model.milestoneLike [anchor cb lb milestone pb] model.noteLike [note] |

## model.global.edit

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.global.edit**   groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.global |
| **Members** | gap |

## model.global.meta

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.global.meta**   groups globally available elements which describe the status of other elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.global |
| **Members** | alt altGrp fLib fs fvLib index join joinGrp link linkGrp span spanGrp timeline |
| **Note** | Elements in this class are typically used to hold groups of links or of abstract interpretations, or by provide indications of certainty etc. It may find be convenient to localize all metadata elements, for example to contain them within the same divison as the elements that they relate to; or to locate them all to a division of their own. They may however appear at any point in a TEI text. |

## model.glossLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.glossLike**   groups elements which provide an alternative name, explanation, or description for any markup construct. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | category joinGrp taxonomy |
| **Members** | gloss |

## model.graphicLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.graphicLike**   groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects. [[3.9. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COGR)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | char glyph model.phrase |
| **Members** | binaryObject graphic media |

## model.headLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.headLike**   groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | divGen listBibl model.divTopPart |
| **Members** | head |

## model.hiLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.hiLike**   groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed. [[3.3. Highlighting and Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQ)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | m model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase w |
| **Members** | hi |

## model.highlighted

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.highlighted**   groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [[3.3. Highlighting and Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQ)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl model.phrase |
| **Members** | model.emphLike [distinct emph foreign gloss mentioned soCalled term title] model.hiLike [hi] |

## model.imprintPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.imprintPart**   groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints. [[3.11. Bibliographic Citations and References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBI)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | imprint model.biblPart |
| **Members** | biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher |

## model.inter

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.inter**   groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | head l macro.limitedContent macro.paraContent macro.specialPara model.common trailer |
| **Members** | model.biblLike [bibl biblFull biblStruct listBibl] [model.egLike](#TEI.model.egLike) model.labelLike [desc label] model.listLike [list] [model.oddDecl](#TEI.model.oddDecl) model.qLike [model.quoteLike [cit quote] q said] model.stageLike [stage] |

## model.lLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.lLike**   groups elements representing metrical components such as verse lines. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | head lg macro.paraContent model.divPart sp trailer |
| **Members** | l |

## model.labelLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.labelLike**   groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | application lg model.inter |
| **Members** | desc label |

## model.limitedPhrase

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.limitedPhrase**   groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | catDesc creation macro.limitedContent macro.phraseSeq.limited |
| **Members** | model.emphLike [distinct emph foreign gloss mentioned soCalled term title] model.hiLike [hi] model.pPart.data [model.addressLike [address email] model.dateLike [date time] model.measureLike [measure measureGrp num] model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name] [model.offsetLike](#TEI.model.offsetLike) model.placeStateLike [[model.placeNamePart](#TEI.model.placeNamePart)] idno rs] ] model.pPart.editorial [abbr choice expan] [model.pPart.msdesc](#TEI.model.pPart.msdesc) [model.phrase.xml](#TEI.model.phrase.xml) model.ptrLike [ptr ref] |

## model.listLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.listLike**   groups list-like elements. [[3.7. Lists](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COLI)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | abstract back model.inter sourceDesc sp |
| **Members** | list |

## model.measureLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.measureLike**   groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning. [[3.5.3. Numbers and Measures](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONANU)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | measureGrp model.pPart.data |
| **Members** | measure measureGrp num |

## model.milestoneLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.milestoneLike**   groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC) [3.10.3. Milestone Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | listBibl model.global |
| **Members** | anchor cb lb milestone pb |

## model.nameLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.nameLike**   groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.addrPart model.correspActionPart model.pPart.data |
| **Members** | model.nameLike.agent [name] [model.offsetLike](#TEI.model.offsetLike) model.placeStateLike [[model.placeNamePart](#TEI.model.placeNamePart)] idno rs |
| **Note** | A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc. |

## model.nameLike.agent

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.nameLike.agent**   groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [[3.5. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONA)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.nameLike respStmt setting |
| **Members** | name |
| **Note** | This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations. |

## model.noteLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.noteLike**   groups globally-available note-like elements. [[3.8. Notes, Annotation, and Indexing](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONO)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | biblStruct char glyph model.global monogr notesStmt |
| **Members** | note |

## model.pLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pLike**   groups paragraph-like elements. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | abstract application availability back cRefPattern calendar correction correspAction correspDesc editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc front hyphenation interpretation langUsage model.correspContextPart model.divPart normalization particDesc prefixDef projectDesc publicationStmt punctuation quotation refsDecl samplingDecl segmentation seriesStmt setting settingDesc sourceDesc sp stdVals styleDefDecl |
| **Members** | ab p |

## model.pLike.front

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pLike.front**   groups paragraph-like elements which can occur as direct constituents of front matter. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | back front |
| **Members** | byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle head titlePart |

## model.pPart.data

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pPart.data**   groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [[3.5. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONA)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl model.limitedPhrase model.phrase |
| **Members** | model.addressLike [address email] model.dateLike [date time] model.measureLike [measure measureGrp num] model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name] [model.offsetLike](#TEI.model.offsetLike) model.placeStateLike [[model.placeNamePart](#TEI.model.placeNamePart)] idno rs] |

## model.pPart.edit

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pPart.edit**   groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [[3.4. Simple Editorial Changes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl model.phrase pc w |
| **Members** | model.pPart.editorial [abbr choice expan] model.pPart.transcriptional [add corr del orig reg sic unclear] |

## model.pPart.editorial

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pPart.editorial**   groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring. [[3.4. Simple Editorial Changes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.limitedPhrase model.pPart.edit |
| **Members** | abbr choice expan |

## model.pPart.transcriptional

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pPart.transcriptional**   groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials. [[3.4. Simple Editorial Changes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.pPart.edit |
| **Members** | add corr del orig reg sic unclear |

## model.phrase

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.phrase**   groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | byline closer date dateline docImprint head l macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara opener time trailer |
| **Members** | model.graphicLike [binaryObject graphic media] model.highlighted [model.emphLike [distinct emph foreign gloss mentioned soCalled term title] model.hiLike [hi] ] [model.lPart](#TEI.model.lPart) model.pPart.data [model.addressLike [address email] model.dateLike [date time] model.measureLike [measure measureGrp num] model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name] [model.offsetLike](#TEI.model.offsetLike) model.placeStateLike [[model.placeNamePart](#TEI.model.placeNamePart)] idno rs] ] model.pPart.edit [model.pPart.editorial [abbr choice expan] model.pPart.transcriptional [add corr del orig reg sic unclear] ] [model.pPart.msdesc](#TEI.model.pPart.msdesc) [model.phrase.xml](#TEI.model.phrase.xml) model.ptrLike [ptr ref] model.segLike [c cl m pc phr s seg w] [model.specDescLike](#TEI.model.specDescLike) |
| **Note** | This class of elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc. |

## model.placeStateLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.placeStateLike**   groups elements which describe changing states of a place. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.nameLike |
| **Members** | [model.placeNamePart](#TEI.model.placeNamePart) |

## model.profileDescPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.profileDescPart**   groups elements which may be used inside <profileDesc> and appear multiple times. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | profileDesc |
| **Members** | abstract calendarDesc correspDesc creation langUsage particDesc settingDesc textClass textDesc |

## model.ptrLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.ptrLike**   groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [[3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COXR)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | analytic application bibl biblStruct cit model.correspContextPart model.limitedPhrase model.phrase model.publicationStmtPart.detail monogr relatedItem series |
| **Members** | ptr ref |

## model.publicationStmtPart.agency

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.publicationStmtPart.agency**   groups the child elements of a <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | publicationStmt |
| **Members** | authority distributor publisher |
| **Note** | The ‘agency’ child elements, while not required, are required if one of the ‘detail’ child elements is to be used. It is not valid to have a ‘detail’ child element without a preceding ‘agency’ child element.  See also model.publicationStmtPart.detail. |

## model.publicationStmtPart.detail

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.publicationStmtPart.detail**   groups the agency-specific child elements of the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | publicationStmt |
| **Members** | model.ptrLike [ptr ref] address availability date idno pubPlace |
| **Note** | A ‘detail’ child element may not occur unless an ‘agency’ child element precedes it.  See also model.publicationStmtPart.agency. |

## model.qLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.qLike**   groups elements related to highlighting which can appear either within or between chunk-level elements. [[3.3. Highlighting and Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQ)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | cit model.inter sp |
| **Members** | model.quoteLike [cit quote] q said |

## model.quoteLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.quoteLike**   groups elements used to directly contain quotations. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.qLike |
| **Members** | cit quote |

## model.resourceLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.resourceLike**   groups separate elements which constitute the content of a digital resource, as opposed to its metadata. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | TEI teiCorpus |
| **Members** | fsdDecl text |

## model.respLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.respLike**   groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | editionStmt model.biblPart titleStmt |
| **Members** | author editor funder meeting principal respStmt sponsor |

## model.segLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.segLike**   groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [[16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASE) [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl model.phrase |
| **Members** | c cl m pc phr s seg w |
| **Note** | The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the <segmentation> element of the <encodingDesc> within the associated TEI header. |

## model.settingPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.settingPart**   groups elements used to describe the setting of a linguistic interaction. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | setting |
| **Members** | activity locale |

## model.stageLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.stageLike**   groups elements containing stage directions or similar things defined by the module for performance texts. [[7.3. Other Types of Performance Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DROTH)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | lg model.inter sp |
| **Members** | stage |
| **Note** | Stage directions are members of class inter: that is, they can appear between or within component-level elements. |

## model.teiHeaderPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.teiHeaderPart**   groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI header. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | teiHeader |
| **Members** | encodingDesc profileDesc xenoData |

## model.textDescPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.textDescPart**   groups elements used to categorize a text for example in terms of its situational parameters. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | textDesc |
| **Members** | channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction preparedness |

## model.titlepagePart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.titlepagePart**   groups elements which can occur as direct constituents of a title page, such as <docTitle>, <docAuthor>, <docImprint>, or <epigraph>. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | titlePage |
| **Members** | binaryObject byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle graphic imprimatur titlePart |

# Attribute classes

## att.ascribed

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.ascribed**   provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual. [[3.3.3. Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ) [8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSBA)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | change q said setting sp stage |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **who** | indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | In the following example from Hamlet, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <castItem> elements in the <castList> using the *@who* attribute.  <**castItem** **type**="role">  <**role** **xml:id**="Barnardo">Bernardo</**role**> </**castItem**> <**castItem** **type**="role">  <**role** **xml:id**="Francisco">Francisco</**role**>  <**roleDesc**>a soldier</**roleDesc**> </**castItem**> <!-- ... --> <**sp** **who**="#Barnardo">  <**speaker**>Bernardo</**speaker**>  <**l** **n**="1">Who's there?</**l**> </**sp**> <**sp** **who**="#Francisco">  <**speaker**>Francisco</**speaker**>  <**l** **n**="2">Nay, answer me: stand, and unfold yourself.</**l**> </**sp**> | | | **Note** | For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified <person> element. | | |

## att.breaking

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.breaking**   provides an attribute to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace. [[3.10.3. Milestone Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | cb lb milestone pb |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **break** | indicates whether or not the element bearing this attribute should be considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Sample values include** | **yes** the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace  **no** the element bearing this attribute is considered not to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace  **maybe** the encoding does not take any position on this issue. | | In the following lines from the ‘Dream of the Rood’, linebreaks occur in the middle of the words lāðost and reord-berendum.  <**ab**> ...eƿesa tome iu icƿæs ȝeƿorden ƿita heardoſt .  leodum la<**lb** **break**="no"/> ðost ærþan ichim lifes  ƿeȝ rihtne ȝerymde reord be<**lb** **break**="no"/>  rendum hƿæt me þaȝeƿeorðode ƿuldres ealdor ofer... </**ab**> | | | |

## att.cReferencing

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.cReferencing**   provides an attribute which may be used to supply a canonical reference as a means of identifying the target of a pointer. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | gloss ptr ref term |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **cRef** | (canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference expressed using the scheme defined in a <refsDecl> element in the TEI header   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.text](#teidata.text) | | **Note** | The value of *@cRef* should be constructed so that when the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section [16.2.5. Canonical References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SACR)) is applied to it the result is a valid URI reference to the intended target  The <refsDecl> to use may be indicated with the *@decls* attribute.  Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given <ptr> element. | | |

## att.canonical

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.canonical**   provides attributes which can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced. [[13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDATTSnr)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.naming [att.personal [name] author editor pubPlace rs] correspDesc docAuthor docTitle funder meeting principal resp respStmt sponsor term title |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **key** | provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.text](#teidata.text) | | <**author**>  <**name** **key**="name 427308"   **type**="organisation">[New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council]</**name**> </**author**> | | | <**author**>  <**name** **key**="Hugo, Victor (1802-1885)"   **ref**="http://www.idref.fr/026927608">Victor Hugo</**name**> </**author**> | | | **Note** | The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent.  No particular syntax is proposed for the values of the *@key* attribute, since its form will depend entirely on practice within a given project. For the same reason, this attribute is not recommended in data interchange, since there is no way of ensuring that the values used by one project are distinct from those used by another. In such a situation, a preferable approach for magic tokens which follows standard practice on the Web is to use a *@ref* attribute whose value is a tag URI as defined in [RFC 4151](#RFC4151). | | | **ref** | (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition or identity for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | <**name** **ref**="http://viaf.org/viaf/109557338"  **type**="person">Seamus Heaney</**name**> | | | **Note** | The value must point directly to one or more XML elements or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities. | | |

## att.citing

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.citing**   provides attributes for specifying the specific part of a bibliographic item being cited. [[1.3.1. Attribute Classes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECAT)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | biblScope citedRange |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **unit** | identifies the unit of information conveyed by the element, e.g. columns, pages, volume, entry.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Suggested values include:** | **volume** the element contains a volume number.  **issue** the element contains an issue number, or volume and issue numbers.  **page** the element contains a page number or page range.  **line** the element contains a line number or line range.  **chapter** the element contains a chapter indication (number and/or title)  **part** the element identifies a part of a book or collection.  **column** the element identifies an entry number or label in a list of entries.  **entry** the element identifies a column. | | | **from** | specifies the starting point of the range of units indicated by the *@unit* attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.word](#teidata.word) | | | **to** | specifies the end-point of the range of units indicated by the *@unit* attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.word](#teidata.word) | | |

## att.datable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.datable**   provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events. [[3.5.4. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA) [13.3.6. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | application change creation date idno licence name resp time title |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **calendar** | indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@calendar]"> <sch:assert test="string-length(.) gt 0">@calendar indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs, but this <sch:name/> element has no textual content.</sch:assert> </sch:rule> | | He was born on <**date** **calendar**="#gregorian">Feb. 22, 1732</**date**>   (<**date** **calendar**="#julian"  **when**="1732-02-22"> Feb. 11, 1731/32, O.S.</**date**>). | | | **Note** | Note that the *@calendar* attribute (unlike *@datingMethod* defined in att.datable.custom) defines the calendar system of the date in the original material defined by the parent element, *not* the calendar to which the date is normalized. | | | **period** | supplies a pointer to some location defining a named period of time within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | |
| **Note** | This ‘superclass’ provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the att.datable.w3c class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the att.datable.iso and att.datable.custom classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes. |

## att.datable.w3c

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.datable.w3c**   provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events conforming to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*. [[3.5.4. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA) [13.3.6. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.datable [application change creation date idno licence name resp time title] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **when** | supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.temporal.w3c](#teidata.temporal.w3c) | | Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats.  <**p**>  <**date** **when**="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</**date**>  <**date** **when**="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</**date**>  <**time** **when**="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm</**time**>  <**time** **when**="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</**time**>  <**date** **when**="1962-10">October of 1962</**date**>  <**date** **when**="--06-12">June 12th</**date**>  <**date** **when**="---01">the first of the month</**date**>  <**date** **when**="--08">August</**date**>  <**date** **when**="2006">MMVI</**date**>  <**date** **when**="0056">AD 56</**date**>  <**date** **when**="-0056">56 BC</**date**> </**p**> | | | This list begins in  the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after  Pentecost, in that year the <**date** **calendar**="#julian"  **when**="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</**date**>. | | | <**opener**>  <**dateline**>   <**placeName**>Dorchester, Village,</**placeName**>   <**date** **when**="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</**date**>  </**dateline**>  <**salute**>To    Mrs. Cornell,</**salute**> Sunday <**time** **when**="12:00:00">noon.</**time**> </**opener**> | | | | **notBefore** | specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.temporal.w3c](#teidata.temporal.w3c) | | | **notAfter** | specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.temporal.w3c](#teidata.temporal.w3c) | | | **from** | indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.temporal.w3c](#teidata.temporal.w3c) | | | **to** | indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.temporal.w3c](#teidata.temporal.w3c) | | |
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@when]"> <sch:report role="nonfatal"  test="@notBefore|@notAfter|@from|@to">The @when attribute cannot be used with any other att.datable.w3c attributes.</sch:report> </sch:rule> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@from]"> <sch:report role="nonfatal"  test="@notBefore">The @from and @notBefore attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@to]"> <sch:report role="nonfatal"  test="@notAfter">The @to and @notAfter attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule> |
| **Example** | <**date** **from**="1863-05-28" **to**="1863-06-01">28 May through 1 June 1863</**date**> |
| **Note** | The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*, using the Gregorian calendar.  The most commonly-encountered format for the date portion of a temporal attribute is yyyy-mm-dd, but yyyy, --mm, ---dd, yyyy-mm, or --mm-dd may also be used. For the time part, the form hh:mm:ss is used.  Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used. |

## att.datcat

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.datcat**   provides the *@dcr:datacat* and *@dcr:ValueDatacat* attributes which are used to align XML elements or attributes with the appropriate Data Categories (DCs) defined by the ISO 12620:2009 standard and stored in the Web repository called ISOCat at <http://www.isocat.org/>. [[9.5.2. Lexical View](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DI.html#DIMVLV) [18.3. Other Atomic Feature Values](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FSSY)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.segLike [c cl m pc phr s seg w] binary f fs numeric string symbol |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **datcat** | contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the given element with the appropriate Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | | **valueDatcat** | contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the content of the given element or the value of the given attribute with the appropriate simple Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | |
| **Example** | In this example *@dcr:datcat* relates the feature name to the data category "partOfSpeech" and *@dcr:valueDatcat* the feature value to the data category "commonNoun". Both these data categories reside in the ISOcat DCR at [www.isocat.org](http://www.isocat.org), which is the DCR used by ISO TC37 and hosted by its registration authority, the MPI for Psycholinguistics in Nijmegen.  <**fs**    xmlns:dcr="http://www.isocat.org/ns/dcr">  <**f** **dcr:datcat**="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1345"   **dcr:valueDatcat**="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1256" **fVal**="#commonNoun" **name**="POS"/> </**fs**> |
| **Note** | ISO 12620:2009 is a standard describing the data model and procedures for a Data Category Registry (DCR). Data categories are defined as elementary descriptors in a linguistic structure. In the DCR data model each data category gets assigned a unique Peristent IDentifier (PID), i.e., an URI. Linguistic resources or preferably their schemas that make use of data categories from a DCR should refer to them using this PID. For XML-based resources, like TEI documents, ISO 12620:2009 normative Annex A gives a small Data Category Reference XML vocabulary (also available online at <http://www.isocat.org/12620/>), which provides two attributes, *@dcr:datcat* and *@dcr:valueDatcat*. |

## att.declarable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.declarable**   provides attributes for those elements in the TEI header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose *@decls* attribute. [[15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | availability bibl biblFull biblStruct correction correspDesc editorialDecl geoDecl hyphenation interpretation langUsage listBibl normalization particDesc projectDesc punctuation quotation refsDecl samplingDecl segmentation settingDesc sourceDesc stdVals styleDefDecl textClass textDesc xenoData |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **default** | indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.truthValue](#teidata.truthValue) | | **Legal values are:** | **true** This element is selected if its parent is selected  **false** This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected. [Default] | | |
| **Note** | The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS). Only one element of a particular type may have a *@default* attribute with a value of true. |

## att.declaring

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.declaring**   provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element. [[15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | ab back body div front gloss graphic group lg media p ptr ref term text |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **decls** | identifies one or more declarable elements within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | |
| **Note** | The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS). |

## att.dimensions

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.dimensions**   provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.editLike [att.transcriptional [add del] corr date expan gap name reg time unclear] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **unit** | names the unit used for the measurement   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Suggested values include:** | **cm** (centimetres)  **mm** (millimetres)  **in** (inches)  **lines** lines of text  **chars** (characters) characters of text | | | **quantity** | specifies the length in the units specified   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.numeric](#teidata.numeric) | | | **extent** | indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.text](#teidata.text) | | <**gap** **extent**="5 words"/> | | | <**height** **extent**="half the page"/> | | | | **precision** | characterizes the precision of the values specified by the other attributes.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.certainty](#teidata.certainty) | | | **scope** | where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Sample values include:** | **all** measurement applies to all instances.  **most** measurement applies to most of the instances inspected.  **range** measurement applies to only the specified range of instances. | | |

## att.divLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.divLike**   provides attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions. [[4. Default Text Structure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | div lg |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.fragmentable (@part)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **org** | (organization) specifies how the content of the division is organized.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **composite** no claim is made about the sequence in which the immediate contents of this division are to be processed, or their inter-relationships.  **uniform** the immediate contents of this element are regarded as forming a logical unit, to be processed in sequence. [Default] | | | **sample** | indicates whether this division is a sample of the original source and if so, from which part.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **initial** division lacks material present at end in source.  **medial** division lacks material at start and end.  **final** division lacks material at start.  **unknown** position of sampled material within original unknown.  **complete** division is not a sample. [Default] | | |

## att.docStatus

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.docStatus**   provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | bibl biblFull biblStruct change revisionDesc |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **status** | describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Sample values include:** | **approved**  **candidate**  **cleared**  **deprecated**  **draft** [Default]  **embargoed**  **expired**  **frozen**  **galley**  **proposed**  **published**  **recommendation**  **submitted**  **unfinished**  **withdrawn** | | |
| **Example** | <**revisionDesc** **status**="published">  <**change** **status**="published"   **when**="2010-10-21"/>  <**change** **status**="cleared" **when**="2010-10-02"/>  <**change** **status**="embargoed"   **when**="2010-08-02"/>  <**change** **status**="frozen" **when**="2010-05-01"   **who**="#MSM"/>  <**change** **status**="draft" **when**="2010-03-01"   **who**="#LB"/> </**revisionDesc**> |

## att.editLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.editLike**   provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [[3.4. Simple Editorial Changes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED) [10.3.1. Origination](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/MS.html#msdates) [13.3.2. The Person Element](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSE) [11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHCO)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.transcriptional [add del] corr date expan gap name reg time unclear |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **evidence** | indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) separated by whitespace | | **Suggested values include:** | **internal** there is internal evidence to support the intervention.  **external** there is external evidence to support the intervention.  **conjecture** the intervention or interpretation has been made by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise. | | | **instant** | indicates whether this is an instant revision or not.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.xTruthValue](#teidata.xTruthValue) | | **Default** | false | | |
| **Note** | The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc. |
| **Note** | Each pointer on the *@source* (if present) corresponding to a witness or witness group should reference a bibliographic citation such as a <witness>, <msDesc>, or <bibl> element, or another external bibliographic citation, documenting the source concerned. |

## att.edition

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.edition**   provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | cb lb milestone pb refState |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **ed** | (edition) supplies a sigil or other arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.word](#teidata.word) separated by whitespace | | | **edRef** | (edition reference) provides a pointer to the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | |
| **Example** | <**l**>Of Mans First Disobedience,<**lb** **ed**="1674"/> and<**lb** **ed**="1667"/> the Fruit</**l**> <**l**>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<**lb** **ed**="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</**l**> <**l**>Brought Death into the World,<**lb** **ed**="1667"/> and all<**lb** **ed**="1674"/> our woe,</**l**> |
| **Example** | <**listBibl**>  <**bibl** **xml:id**="stapledon1937">   <**author**>Olaf Stapledon</**author**>,  <**title**>Starmaker</**title**>, <**publisher**>Methuen</**publisher**>, <**date**>1937</**date**>  </**bibl**>  <**bibl** **xml:id**="stapledon1968">   <**author**>Olaf Stapledon</**author**>,  <**title**>Starmaker</**title**>, <**publisher**>Dover</**publisher**>, <**date**>1968</**date**>  </**bibl**> </**listBibl**> <!-- ... --> <**p**>Looking into the future aeons from the supreme moment of  the cosmos, I saw the populations still with all their  strength maintaining the<**pb** **edRef**="#stapledon1968" **n**="411"/>essentials of their ancient culture,  still living their personal lives in zest and endless  novelty of action, … I saw myself still  preserving, though with increasing difficulty, my lucid  con-<**pb** **edRef**="#stapledon1937" **n**="291"/>sciousness;</**p**> |

## att.fragmentable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.fragmentable**   provides an attribute for representing fragmentation of a structural element, typically as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.divLike [div lg] att.segLike [c cl m pc phr s seg w] ab l p |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **part** | specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **Y** (yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect  **N** (no) the element is not fragmented, or no claim is made as to its completeness [Default]  **I** (initial) this is the initial part of a fragmented element  **M** (medial) this is a medial part of a fragmented element  **F** (final) this is the final part of a fragmented element | | **Note** | The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the element may be be reconstituted. | | |

## att.global

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global**   provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [[1.3.1.1. Global Attributes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STGA)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | TEI ab abbr abstract activity add addrLine address alt altGrp analytic anchor appInfo application author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct binary binaryObject body byline c cRefPattern calendar calendarDesc catDesc catRef category cb change channel char charDecl charName charProp choice cit citedRange cl classCode classDecl closer constitution corr correction correspAction correspContext correspDesc creation date dateline default del derivation desc distinct distributor div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email emph encodingDesc expan extent f fDecl fDescr fLib factuality fileDesc foreign front fs fsDecl fsDescr fsdDecl funder fvLib g gap geoDecl gloss glyph glyphName graphic group head headItem headLabel hi hyphenation idno imprimatur imprint index interaction interpretation item join joinGrp keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence link linkGrp list listBibl listChange listPrefixDef localName locale m mapping measure measureGrp media meeting mentioned milestone monogr name namespace normalization note notesStmt num numeric opener orig p particDesc pb pc phr postBox postCode postscript prefixDef preparedness principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation purpose q quotation quote ref refState refsDecl reg relatedItem rendition resp respStmt revisionDesc rs s said salute samplingDecl schemaRef seg segmentation series seriesStmt setting settingDesc sic signed soCalled sourceDesc sp span spanGrp speaker sponsor stage stdVals street string styleDefDecl symbol tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass textDesc textLang time timeline title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear unicodeName vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vRange value w when xenoData |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **xml:id** | (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** |  | | **Note** | The *@xml:id* attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section [3.10. Reference Systems](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS). | | | **n** | (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.text](#teidata.text) | | **Note** | The value of this attribute is always understood to be a single token, even if it contains space or other punctuation characters, and need not be composed of numbers only. It is typically used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text. | | | **xml:lang** | (language) indicates the language of the element content using a ‘tag’ generated according to [BCP 47](http://www.rfc-editor.org/rfc/bcp/bcp47.txt).   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.language](#teidata.language) | | <**p**> … The consequences of  this rapid depopulation were the loss of the last <**foreign** **xml:lang**="rap">ariki</**foreign**> or chief  (Routledge 1920:205,210) and their connections to  ancestral territorial organization.</**p**> | | | **Note** | The xml:lang value will be inherited from the immediately enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to specify xml:lang at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a different default may be needed for the teiHeader from that needed for the associated resource element or elements, and that a single TEI document may contain texts in many languages.  The authoritative list of registered language subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see <http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/>, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see <https://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.en.php>.  The value used must conform with BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element with a matching value for its *@ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF)Internet Engineering Task Force definitions. | | | **xml:base** | provides a base URI reference with which applications can resolve relative URI references into absolute URI references.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | <**div** **type**="bibl">  <**head**>Bibliography</**head**>  <**listBibl** **xml:base**="http://www.lib.ucdavis.edu/BWRP/Works/">   <**bibl**>    <**author**>     <**name**>Landon, Letitia Elizabeth</**name**>    </**author**>    <**ref** **target**="LandLVowOf.sgm">     <**title**>The Vow of the Peacock</**title**>    </**ref**>   </**bibl**>   <**bibl**>    <**author**>     <**name**>Compton, Margaret Clephane</**name**>    </**author**>    <**ref** **target**="NortMIrene.sgm">     <**title**>Irene, a Poem in Six Cantos</**title**>    </**ref**>   </**bibl**>   <**bibl**>    <**author**>     <**name**>Taylor, Jane</**name**>    </**author**>    <**ref** **target**="TaylJEssay.sgm">     <**title**>Essays in Rhyme on Morals and Manners</**title**>    </**ref**>   </**bibl**>  </**listBibl**> </**div**> | | | | **xml:space** | signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **default** signals that the application's default white-space processing modes are acceptable  **preserve** indicates the intent that applications preserve all white space | | **Note** | The [XML specification](http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#sec-white-space) provides further guidance on the use of this attribute. Note that many parsers may not handle xml:space correctly. | | |

## att.global.analytic

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.analytic**   provides additional global attributes for associating specific analyses or interpretations with appropriate portions of a text. [[17.2. Global Attributes for Simple Analyses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AIATTS) [17.3. Spans and Interpretations](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AISP)] | |
| **Module** | analysis |
| **Members** | att.global [TEI ab abbr abstract activity add addrLine address alt altGrp analytic anchor appInfo application author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct binary binaryObject body byline c cRefPattern calendar calendarDesc catDesc catRef category cb change channel char charDecl charName charProp choice cit citedRange cl classCode classDecl closer constitution corr correction correspAction correspContext correspDesc creation date dateline default del derivation desc distinct distributor div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email emph encodingDesc expan extent f fDecl fDescr fLib factuality fileDesc foreign front fs fsDecl fsDescr fsdDecl funder fvLib g gap geoDecl gloss glyph glyphName graphic group head headItem headLabel hi hyphenation idno imprimatur imprint index interaction interpretation item join joinGrp keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence link linkGrp list listBibl listChange listPrefixDef localName locale m mapping measure measureGrp media meeting mentioned milestone monogr name namespace normalization note notesStmt num numeric opener orig p particDesc pb pc phr postBox postCode postscript prefixDef preparedness principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation purpose q quotation quote ref refState refsDecl reg relatedItem rendition resp respStmt revisionDesc rs s said salute samplingDecl schemaRef seg segmentation series seriesStmt setting settingDesc sic signed soCalled sourceDesc sp span spanGrp speaker sponsor stage stdVals street string styleDefDecl symbol tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass textDesc textLang time timeline title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear unicodeName vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vRange value w when xenoData] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **ana** | (analysis) indicates one or more elements containing interpretations of the element on which the *@ana* attribute appears.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | **Note** | When multiple values are given, they may reflect either multiple divergent interpretations of an ambiguous text, or multiple mutually consistent interpretations of the same passage in different contexts. | | |

## att.global.linking

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.linking**   provides a set of attributes for hypertextual linking. [[16. Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SA)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Members** | att.global [TEI ab abbr abstract activity add addrLine address alt altGrp analytic anchor appInfo application author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct binary binaryObject body byline c cRefPattern calendar calendarDesc catDesc catRef category cb change channel char charDecl charName charProp choice cit citedRange cl classCode classDecl closer constitution corr correction correspAction correspContext correspDesc creation date dateline default del derivation desc distinct distributor div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email emph encodingDesc expan extent f fDecl fDescr fLib factuality fileDesc foreign front fs fsDecl fsDescr fsdDecl funder fvLib g gap geoDecl gloss glyph glyphName graphic group head headItem headLabel hi hyphenation idno imprimatur imprint index interaction interpretation item join joinGrp keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence link linkGrp list listBibl listChange listPrefixDef localName locale m mapping measure measureGrp media meeting mentioned milestone monogr name namespace normalization note notesStmt num numeric opener orig p particDesc pb pc phr postBox postCode postscript prefixDef preparedness principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation purpose q quotation quote ref refState refsDecl reg relatedItem rendition resp respStmt revisionDesc rs s said salute samplingDecl schemaRef seg segmentation series seriesStmt setting settingDesc sic signed soCalled sourceDesc sp span spanGrp speaker sponsor stage stdVals street string styleDefDecl symbol tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass textDesc textLang time timeline title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear unicodeName vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vRange value w when xenoData] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **corresp** | (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | <**group**>  <**text** **xml:id**="t1-g1-t1"   **xml:lang**="mi">   <**body** **xml:id**="t1-g1-t1-body1">    <**div** **type**="chapter">     <**head**>He Whakamaramatanga mo te Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki, i nga Whenua Maori, 1876.</**head**>     <**p**>…</**p**>    </**div**>   </**body**>  </**text**>  <**text** **xml:id**="t1-g1-t2"   **xml:lang**="en">   <**body** **corresp**="#t1-g1-t1-body1"    **xml:id**="t1-g1-t2-body1">    <**div** **type**="chapter">     <**head**>An Act to regulate the Sale, Letting, and Disposal of Native Lands, 1876.</**head**>     <**p**>…</**p**>    </**div**>   </**body**>  </**text**> </**group**>  In this example a <group> contains two <text>s, each containing the same document in a different language. The correspondence is indicated using *@corresp*. The language is indicated using *@xml:lang*, whose value is inherited; both the tag with the *@corresp* and the tag pointed to by the *@corresp* inherit the value from their immediate parent. | | | <!-- In a placeography called "places.xml" --><**place** **corresp**="people.xml#LOND2 people.xml#GENI1"  **xml:id**="LOND1">  <**placeName**>London</**placeName**>  <**desc**>The city of London...</**desc**> </**place**> <!-- In a literary personography called "people.xml" --> <**person** **corresp**="places.xml#LOND1 #GENI1"  **xml:id**="LOND2">  <**persName** **type**="lit">London</**persName**>  <**note**>   <**p**>Allegorical character representing the city of <**placeName** **ref**="places.xml#LOND1">London</**placeName**>.</**p**>  </**note**> </**person**> <**person** **corresp**="places.xml#LOND1 #LOND2"  **xml:id**="GENI1">  <**persName** **type**="lit">London’s Genius</**persName**>  <**note**>   <**p**>Personification of London’s genius. Appears as an      allegorical character in mayoral shows.   </**p**>  </**note**> </**person**>  In this example, a <place> element containing information about the city of London is linked with two <person> elements in a literary personography. This correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in which an allegorical character could be substituted for the physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a correspondence between them. | | | | **synch** | (synchronous) points to elements that are synchronous with the current element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | | **sameAs** | points to an element that is the same as the current element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | | **copyOf** | points to an element of which the current element is a copy.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | **Note** | Any content of the current element should be ignored. Its true content is that of the element being pointed at. | | | **next** | points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | **Note** | It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute. | | | **prev** | (previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | **Note** | It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute. | | | **exclude** | points to elements that are in exclusive alternation with the current element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | | **select** | selects one or more alternants; if one alternant is selected, the ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as resolved. If more than one alternant is selected, the degree of ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as reduced by the number of alternants not selected.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | **Note** | This attribute should be placed on an element which is superordinate to all of the alternants from which the selection is being made. | | |

## att.global.rendition

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.rendition**   provides rendering attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [[1.3.1.1.3. Rendition Indicators](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STGAre)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.global [TEI ab abbr abstract activity add addrLine address alt altGrp analytic anchor appInfo application author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct binary binaryObject body byline c cRefPattern calendar calendarDesc catDesc catRef category cb change channel char charDecl charName charProp choice cit citedRange cl classCode classDecl closer constitution corr correction correspAction correspContext correspDesc creation date dateline default del derivation desc distinct distributor div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email emph encodingDesc expan extent f fDecl fDescr fLib factuality fileDesc foreign front fs fsDecl fsDescr fsdDecl funder fvLib g gap geoDecl gloss glyph glyphName graphic group head headItem headLabel hi hyphenation idno imprimatur imprint index interaction interpretation item join joinGrp keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence link linkGrp list listBibl listChange listPrefixDef localName locale m mapping measure measureGrp media meeting mentioned milestone monogr name namespace normalization note notesStmt num numeric opener orig p particDesc pb pc phr postBox postCode postscript prefixDef preparedness principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation purpose q quotation quote ref refState refsDecl reg relatedItem rendition resp respStmt revisionDesc rs s said salute samplingDecl schemaRef seg segmentation series seriesStmt setting settingDesc sic signed soCalled sourceDesc sp span spanGrp speaker sponsor stage stdVals street string styleDefDecl symbol tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass textDesc textLang time timeline title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear unicodeName vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vRange value w when xenoData] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **rend** | (rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.word](#teidata.word) separated by whitespace | | <**head** **rend**="align(center) case(allcaps)">  <**lb**/>To The <**lb**/>Duchesse <**lb**/>of <**lb**/>Newcastle, <**lb**/>On Her <**lb**/>  <**hi** **rend**="case(mixed)">New Blazing-World</**hi**>.  </**head**> | | | **Note** | These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the *@rend* attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation vary too much from text to text and the decision to record or ignore individual characteristics varies too much from project to project. Some potentially useful conventions are noted from time to time at appropriate points in the Guidelines. The values of the *@rend* attribute are a set of sequence-indeterminate individual tokens separated by whitespace. | | | **style** | contains an expression in some formal style definition language which defines the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.text](#teidata.text) | | <**head** **style**="text-align: center; font-variant: small-caps">  <**lb**/>To The <**lb**/>Duchesse <**lb**/>of <**lb**/>Newcastle, <**lb**/>On Her <**lb**/>  <**hi** **style**="font-variant: normal">New Blazing-World</**hi**>.  </**head**> | | | **Note** | Unlike the attribute values of *@rend*, which uses whitespace as a separator, the *@style* attribute may contain whitespace. This attribute is intended for recording inline stylistic information concerning the source, not any particular output.  The formal language in which values for this attribute are expressed may be specified using the <styleDefDecl> element in the TEI header.  If *@style* and *@rendition* are both present on an element, then *@style* overrides or complements *@rendition*. *@style* should not be used in conjunction with *@rend*, because the latter does not employ a formal style definition language. | | | **rendition** | points to a description of the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | <**head** **rendition**="#ac #sc">  <**lb**/>To The <**lb**/>Duchesse <**lb**/>of <**lb**/>Newcastle, <**lb**/>On Her <**lb**/>  <**hi** **rendition**="#normal">New Blazing-World</**hi**>.  </**head**> <!-- elsewhere... --> <**rendition** **scheme**="css"  **xml:id**="sc">font-variant: small-caps</**rendition**> <**rendition** **scheme**="css"  **xml:id**="normal">font-variant: normal</**rendition**> <**rendition** **scheme**="css"  **xml:id**="ac">text-align: center</**rendition**> | | | **Note** | The *@rendition* attribute is used in a very similar way to the *@class* attribute defined for XHTML but with the important distinction that its function is to describe the appearance of the source text, not necessarily to determine how that text should be presented on screen or paper.  If *@rendition* is used to refer to a style definition in a formal language like CSS, it is recommended that it not be used in conjunction with *@rend*. Where both *@rendition* and *@rend* are supplied, the latter is understood to override or complement the former.  Each URI provided should indicate a <rendition> element defining the intended rendition in terms of some appropriate style language, as indicated by the *@scheme* attribute. | | |

## att.global.responsibility

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.responsibility**   provides attributes indicating the agent responsible for some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the degree of certainty associated with it. [[1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STGAso) [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED) [11.3.2.2. Hand, Responsibility, and Certainty Attributes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHHR) [17.3. Spans and Interpretations](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AISP) [13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDATTSnr)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.global [TEI ab abbr abstract activity add addrLine address alt altGrp analytic anchor appInfo application author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct binary binaryObject body byline c cRefPattern calendar calendarDesc catDesc catRef category cb change channel char charDecl charName charProp choice cit citedRange cl classCode classDecl closer constitution corr correction correspAction correspContext correspDesc creation date dateline default del derivation desc distinct distributor div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email emph encodingDesc expan extent f fDecl fDescr fLib factuality fileDesc foreign front fs fsDecl fsDescr fsdDecl funder fvLib g gap geoDecl gloss glyph glyphName graphic group head headItem headLabel hi hyphenation idno imprimatur imprint index interaction interpretation item join joinGrp keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence link linkGrp list listBibl listChange listPrefixDef localName locale m mapping measure measureGrp media meeting mentioned milestone monogr name namespace normalization note notesStmt num numeric opener orig p particDesc pb pc phr postBox postCode postscript prefixDef preparedness principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation purpose q quotation quote ref refState refsDecl reg relatedItem rendition resp respStmt revisionDesc rs s said salute samplingDecl schemaRef seg segmentation series seriesStmt setting settingDesc sic signed soCalled sourceDesc sp span spanGrp speaker sponsor stage stdVals street string styleDefDecl symbol tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass textDesc textLang time timeline title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear unicodeName vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vRange value w when xenoData] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **cert** | (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.probCert](#teidata.probCert) | | | **resp** | (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | **Note** | To reduce the ambiguity of a *@resp* pointing directly to a person or organization, we recommend that *@resp* be used to point not to an agent (<person> or <org>) but to a <respStmt>, <author>, <editor> or similar element which clarifies the exact role played by the agent. Pointing to multiple <respStmt>s allows the encoder to specify clearly each of the roles played in part of a TEI file (creating, transcribing, encoding, editing, proofing etc.). | | |
| **Example** | Blessed are the <**choice**>  <**sic**>cheesemakers</**sic**>  <**corr** **cert**="high" **resp**="#editor">peacemakers</**corr**> </**choice**>: for they shall be called the children of God. |
| **Example** | <!-- in the <text> ... --><**lg**> <!-- ... -->  <**l**>Punkes, Panders, baſe extortionizing    sla<**choice**>    <**sic**>n</**sic**>    <**corr** **resp**="#JENS1\_transcriber">u</**corr**>   </**choice**>es,</**l**> <!-- ... --> </**lg**> <!-- in the <teiHeader> ... --> <!-- ... --> <**respStmt** **xml:id**="JENS1\_transcriber">  <**resp** **when**="2014">Transcriber</**resp**>  <**name**>Janelle Jenstad</**name**> </**respStmt**> |

## att.global.source

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.source**   provides an attribute used by elements to point to an external source. [[1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STGAso) [3.3.3. Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ) [8.3.4. Writing](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSBAWR)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.global [TEI ab abbr abstract activity add addrLine address alt altGrp analytic anchor appInfo application author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct binary binaryObject body byline c cRefPattern calendar calendarDesc catDesc catRef category cb change channel char charDecl charName charProp choice cit citedRange cl classCode classDecl closer constitution corr correction correspAction correspContext correspDesc creation date dateline default del derivation desc distinct distributor div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email emph encodingDesc expan extent f fDecl fDescr fLib factuality fileDesc foreign front fs fsDecl fsDescr fsdDecl funder fvLib g gap geoDecl gloss glyph glyphName graphic group head headItem headLabel hi hyphenation idno imprimatur imprint index interaction interpretation item join joinGrp keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence link linkGrp list listBibl listChange listPrefixDef localName locale m mapping measure measureGrp media meeting mentioned milestone monogr name namespace normalization note notesStmt num numeric opener orig p particDesc pb pc phr postBox postCode postscript prefixDef preparedness principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation purpose q quotation quote ref refState refsDecl reg relatedItem rendition resp respStmt revisionDesc rs s said salute samplingDecl schemaRef seg segmentation series seriesStmt setting settingDesc sic signed soCalled sourceDesc sp span spanGrp speaker sponsor stage stdVals street string styleDefDecl symbol tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass textDesc textLang time timeline title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear unicodeName vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vRange value w when xenoData] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **source** | specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | **Note** | The *@source* attribute points to an external source. When used on elements describing schema components such as <schemaSpec> or <moduleRef> it identifies the source from which declarations for the components of the object being defined may be obtained.  On other elements it provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.  In either case, the location may be provided using any form of URI, for example an absolute URI, a relative URI, or private scheme URI that is expanded to an absolute URI as documented in a <prefixDef>.  If more than one location is specified, the default assumption is that the required source should be obtained by combining the resources indicated. | | |
| **Example** | <**p**> <!-- ... --> As Willard McCarty (<**bibl** **xml:id**="mcc\_2012">2012, p.2</**bibl**>) tells us, <**quote** **source**="#mcc\_2012">‘Collaboration’ is a problematic and should be a contested    term.</**quote**> <!-- ... --> </**p**> |
| **Example** | <**p**> <!-- ... -->  <**quote** **source**="#chicago\_15\_ed">Grammatical theories are in flux, and the more we learn, the    less we seem to know.</**quote**> <!-- ... --> </**p**> <!-- ... --> <**bibl** **xml:id**="chicago\_15\_ed">  <**title** **level**="m">The Chicago Manual of Style</**title**>, <**edition**>15th edition</**edition**>. <**pubPlace**>Chicago</**pubPlace**>: <**publisher**>University of    Chicago Press</**publisher**> (<**date**>2003</**date**>), <**biblScope** **unit**="page">p.147</**biblScope**>.  </**bibl**> |
| **Example** | <**elementRef** **key**="p" **source**="tei:2.0.1"/>  Include in the schema an element named <p> available from the TEI P5 2.0.1 release. |
| **Example** | <**schemaSpec** **ident**="myODD"  **source**="mycompiledODD.xml"> <!-- further declarations specifying the components required --> </**schemaSpec**>  Create a schema using components taken from the file mycompiledODD.xml. |

## att.internetMedia

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.internetMedia**   provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.media [binaryObject graphic] ptr ref |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **mimeType** | (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.word](#teidata.word) separated by whitespace | | |
| **Example** | In this example *@mimeType* is used to indicate that the URL points to a TEI XML file encoded in UTF-8.  <**ref** **mimeType**="application/tei+xml; charset=UTF-8"  **target**="http://sourceforge.net/p/tei/code/HEAD/tree/trunk/P5/Source/guidelines-en.xml"/> |
| **Note** | This attribute class provides an attribute for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, using a value taken from a standard taxonomy. At present only a single taxonomy is supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Media Type system. This typology of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in [RFC 2046](http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2046.txt). The [list of types](http://www.iana.org/assignments/media-types/) is maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). The *@mimeType* attribute must have a value taken from this list. |

## att.interpLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.interpLike**   provides attributes for elements which represent a formal analysis or interpretation. [[17.2. Global Attributes for Simple Analyses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AIATTS)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | span spanGrp |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | indicates what kind of phenomenon is being noted in the passage.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Sample values include:** | **image** identifies an image in the passage.  **character** identifies a character associated with the passage.  **theme** identifies a theme in the passage.  **allusion** identifies an allusion to another text. | | | **inst** | (instances) points to instances of the analysis or interpretation represented by the current element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | **Note** | The current element should be an analytic one. The element pointed at should be a textual one. | | |

## att.measurement

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.measurement**   provides attributes to represent a regularized or normalized measurement. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | measure measureGrp |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **unit** | indicates the units used for the measurement, usually using the standard symbol for the desired units.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Suggested values include:** | **m** (metre) SI base unit of length  **kg** (kilogram) SI base unit of mass  **s** (second) SI base unit of time  **Hz** (hertz) SI unit of frequency  **Pa** (pascal) SI unit of pressure or stress  **Ω** (ohm) SI unit of electric resistance  **L** (litre) 1 dm³  **t** (tonne) 10³ kg  **ha** (hectare) 1 hm²  **Å** (ångström) 10⁻¹⁰ m  **mL** (millilitre)  **cm** (centimetre)  **dB** (decibel) see remarks, below  **kbit** (kilobit) 10³ or 1000 bits  **Kibit** (kibibit) 2¹⁰ or 1024 bits  **kB** (kilobyte) 10³ or 1000 bytes  **KiB** (kibibyte) 2¹⁰ or 1024 bytes  **MB** (megabyte) 10⁶ or 1 000 000 bytes  **MiB** (mebibyte) 2²⁰ or 1 048 576 bytes | | **Note** | If the measurement being represented is not expressed in a particular unit, but rather is a number of discrete items, the unit count should be used, or the *@unit* attribute may be left unspecified.  Wherever appropriate, a recognized SI unit name should be used (see further <http://www.bipm.org/en/publications/si-brochure/>; <http://physics.nist.gov/cuu/Units/>). The list above is indicative rather than exhaustive. | | | **quantity** | specifies the number of the specified units that comprise the measurement   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.numeric](#teidata.numeric) | | | **commodity** | indicates the substance that is being measured   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.word](#teidata.word) separated by whitespace | | **Note** | In general, when the commodity is made of discrete entities, the plural form should be used, even when the measurement is of only one of them. | | |
| **Note** | This attribute class provides a triplet of attributes that may be used either to regularize the values of the measurement being encoded, or to normalize them with respect to a standard measurement system.  <**l**>So weren't you gonna buy <**measure** **commodity**="ice cream"   **quantity**="0.5" **unit**="gal">half    a gallon</**measure**>, baby</**l**> <**l**>So won't you go and buy <**measure** **commodity**="ice cream"   **quantity**="1.893" **unit**="L">half    a gallon</**measure**>, baby?</**l**> |
| **Note** | The unit should normally be named using the standard abbreviation for an SI unit (see further <http://www.bipm.org/en/publications/si-brochure/>; <http://physics.nist.gov/cuu/Units/>). However, encoders may also specify measurements using informally defined units such as lines or characters. |

## att.media

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.media**   provides attributes for specifying display and related properties of external media. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | binaryObject graphic |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.internetMedia (@mimeType)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **width** | Where the media are displayed, indicates the display width   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.outputMeasurement](#teidata.outputMeasurement) | | | **height** | Where the media are displayed, indicates the display height   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.outputMeasurement](#teidata.outputMeasurement) | | | **scale** | Where the media are displayed, indicates a scale factor to be applied when generating the desired display size   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.numeric](#teidata.numeric) | | |

## att.milestoneUnit

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.milestoneUnit**   provides an attribute to indicate the type of section which is changing at a specific milestone. [[3.10.3. Milestone Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5) [2.3.6.3. Milestone Method](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD54M) [2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD54)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Members** | milestone refState |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **unit** | provides a conventional name for the kind of section changing at this milestone.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Suggested values include:** | **page** physical page breaks (synonymous with the <pb> element).  **column** column breaks.  **line** line breaks (synonymous with the <lb> element).  **book** any units termed book, liber, etc.  **poem** individual poems in a collection.  **canto** cantos or other major sections of a poem.  **speaker** changes of speaker or narrator.  **stanza** stanzas within a poem, book, or canto.  **act** acts within a play.  **scene** scenes within a play or act.  **section** sections of any kind.  **absent** passages not present in the reference edition.  **unnumbered** passages present in the text, but not to be included as part of the reference. | | <**milestone** **ed**="La"  **n**="23"  **unit**="Dreissiger"/>  ... <**milestone** **ed**="AV"  **n**="24"  **unit**="verse"/> ... | | | **Note** | If the milestone marks the beginning of a piece of text not present in the reference edition, the special value absent may be used as the value of *@unit*. The normal interpretation is that the reference edition does not contain the text which follows, until the next <milestone> tag for the edition in question is encountered.  In addition to the values suggested, other terms may be appropriate (e.g. Stephanus for the Stephanus numbers in Plato). | | |

## att.naming

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.naming**   provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. [[3.5.1. Referring Strings](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONARS) [13.3.5. Names and Nyms](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDNYM)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.personal [name] author editor pubPlace rs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.canonical (@key, @ref)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **role** | may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) separated by whitespace | | | **nymRef** | (reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (nym) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | **Note** | The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names. | | |

## att.patternReplacement

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.patternReplacement**   provides attributes for regular-expression matching and replacement. [[16.2.3. Using Abbreviated Pointers](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAPU) [2.3.6.3. Milestone Method](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD54M) [2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD54) [2.3.6.2. Search-and-Replace Method](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD54S)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Members** | cRefPattern prefixDef |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **matchPattern** | specifies a regular expression against which the values of other attributes can be matched.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pattern](#teidata.pattern) | | **Note** | The syntax used should follow that defined by [W3C XPath syntax](http://www.w3.org/TR/xpath-functions/#regex-syntax). Note that parenthesized groups are used not only for establishing order of precedence and atoms for quantification, but also for creating subpatterns to be referenced by the *@replacementPattern* attribute. | | | **replacementPattern** | specifies a ‘replacement pattern’, that is, the skeleton of a relative or absolute URI containing references to groups in the *@matchPattern* which, once subpattern substitution has been performed, complete the URI.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [teidata.replacement](#teidata.replacement) | | **Note** | The strings $1, $2 etc. are references to the corresponding group in the regular expression specified by *@matchPattern* (counting open parenthesis, left to right). Processors are expected to replace them with whatever matched the corresponding group in the regular expression.  If a digit preceded by a dollar sign is needed in the actual replacement pattern (as opposed to being used as a back reference), the dollar sign must be written as %24. | | |

## att.personal

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.personal**   (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | name |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **full** | indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **yes** the name component is spelled out in full. [Default]  **abb** (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.  **init** (initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial. | | | **sort** | specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the name.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.count](#teidata.count) | | |

## att.placement

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.placement**   provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears. [[3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDADD) [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHAD)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | add head label note stage |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **place** | specifies where this item is placed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) separated by whitespace | | **Suggested values include:** | **below** below the line  **bottom** at the foot of the page  **margin** in the margin (left, right, or both)  **top** at the top of the page  **opposite** on the opposite, i.e. facing, page  **overleaf** on the other side of the leaf  **above** above the line  **end** at the end of e.g. chapter or volume.  **inline** within the body of the text.  **inspace** in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe. | | <**add** **place**="margin">[An addition written in the margin]</**add**> <**add** **place**="bottom opposite">[An addition written at the  foot of the current page and also on the facing page]</**add**> | | | <**note** **place**="bottom">Ibid, p.7</**note**> | | | |

## att.pointing

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.pointing**   provides a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [[1.3.1.1.2. Language Indicators](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STGAla) [3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COXR)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.pointing.group [altGrp joinGrp linkGrp] calendar catRef citedRange gloss join licence link note ptr ref span term |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **targetLang** | specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by *@target*, using a ‘language tag’ generated according to [BCP 47](http://www.rfc-editor.org/rfc/bcp/bcp47.txt).   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.language](#teidata.language) | | **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]"> <sch:assert test="@target">@targetLang should only be used on <sch:name/> if @target is specified.</sch:assert> </sch:rule> | | <**linkGrp** **xml:id**="pol-swh\_aln\_2.1-linkGrp">  <**ptr** **target**="pol/UDHR/text.xml#pol\_txt\_1-head"   **targetLang**="pl"   **type**="tuv"   **xml:id**="pol-swh\_aln\_2.1.1-ptr"/>  <**ptr** **target**="swh/UDHR/text.xml#swh\_txt\_1-head"   **targetLang**="sw"   **type**="tuv"   **xml:id**="pol-swh\_aln\_2.1.2-ptr"/> </**linkGrp**>  In the example above, the <linkGrp> combines pointers at parallel fragments of the *Universal Declaration of Human Rights*: one of them is in Polish, the other in Swahili. | | | **Note** | The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element with a matching value for its *@ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF)Internet Engineering Task Force definitions. | | | **target** | specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | **Note** | One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. TEI%20Consortium. | | | **evaluate** | specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **all** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer.  **one** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer.  **none** no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer's target. | | **Note** | If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers. | | |

## att.pointing.group

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.pointing.group**   provides a set of attributes common to all elements which enclose groups of pointer elements. [[16. Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SA)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | altGrp joinGrp linkGrp |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **domains** | optionally specifies the identifiers of the elements within which all elements indicated by the contents of this element lie.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 2–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | **Note** | If this attribute is supplied every element specified as a target must be contained within the element or elements named by it. An application may choose whether or not to report failures to satisfy this constraint as errors, but may not access an element of the right identifier but in the wrong context. If this attribute is not supplied, then target elements may appear anywhere within the target document. | | | **targFunc** | (target function) describes the function of each of the values of the *@target* attribute of the enclosed <link>, <join>, or <alt> tags.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 2–∞ occurrences of [teidata.word](#teidata.word) separated by whitespace | | **Note** | The number of separate values must match the number of values in the *@target* attribute in the enclosed <link>, <join>, or <alt> tags (an intermediate <ptr> element may be needed to accomplish this). It should also match the number of values in the *@domains* attribute, of the current element, if one has been specified. | | |

## att.ranging

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.ranging**   provides attributes for describing numerical ranges. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.dimensions [att.editLike [att.transcriptional [add del] corr date expan gap name reg time unclear] ] num |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **atLeast** | gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.numeric](#teidata.numeric) | | | **atMost** | gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.numeric](#teidata.numeric) | | | **min** | where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.numeric](#teidata.numeric) | | | **max** | where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.numeric](#teidata.numeric) | | | **confidence** | specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by *@min* and *@max*, or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.probability](#teidata.probability) | | |
| **Example** | The MS. was lost in transmission by mail from <**del** **rend**="overstrike">  <**gap** **atLeast**="1" **atMost**="2"   **extent**="one or two letters" **reason**="illegible" **unit**="chars"/> </**del**> Philadelphia to the Graphic office, New York. |

## att.resourced

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.resourced**   provides attributes by which a resource (such as an externally held media file) may be located. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | graphic media schemaRef |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **url** | (uniform resource locator) specifies the URL from which the media concerned may be obtained.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | |

## att.segLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.segLike**   provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [[16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASE) [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | c cl m pc phr s seg w |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat) att.fragmentable (@part)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **function** | characterizes the function of the segment.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Note** | Attribute values will often vary depending on the type of element to which they are attached. For example, a <cl>, may take values such as coordinate, subject, adverbial etc. For a <phr>, such values as subject, predicate etc. may be more appropriate. Such constraints will typically be implemented by a project-defined customization. | | |

## att.sortable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.sortable**   provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [[9.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DI.html#DIBO)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | bibl biblFull biblStruct correspAction idno item list listBibl listChange term |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **sortKey** | supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.word](#teidata.word) | | David's other principal backer, Josiah  ha-Kohen <**index** **indexName**="NAMES">  <**term** **sortKey**="Azarya\_Josiah\_Kohen">Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</**term**> </**index**> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was David's own first  cousin. | | | **Note** | The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produced the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent  Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for 4-H will often appear alphabetized under ‘fourh’, and McCoy may be alphabetized under ‘maccoy’, while A1, A4, and A5 may all appear in numeric order ‘alphabetized’ between ‘a-’ and ‘AA’. The sort key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location. | | |

## att.spanning

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.spanning**   provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms rather than by enclosing it. [[11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHAD) [1.3.1. Attribute Classes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECAT)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | cb index lb milestone pb |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **spanTo** | indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | **Schematron** | The @spanTo attribute must point to an element following the current element  <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@spanTo]"> <sch:assert test="id(substring(@spanTo,2)) and following::\*[@xml:id=substring(current()/@spanTo,2)]">The element indicated by @spanTo (<sch:value-of select="@spanTo"/>) must follow the current element <sch:name/> </sch:assert> </sch:rule> | | |
| **Note** | The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the *@spanTo* attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive with the pointing element. If no content is present, the assumption is that the starting point of the span is immediately following the element itself. |

## att.styleDef

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.styleDef**   provides attributes to specify the name of a formal definition language used to provide formatting or rendition information. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | rendition styleDefDecl |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **scheme** | identifies the language used to describe the rendition.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **css** Cascading Stylesheet Language  **xslfo** Extensible Stylesheet Language Formatting Objects  **free** Informal free text description  **other** A user-defined rendition description language | | **Note** | If no value for the @scheme attribute is provided, then the default assumption should be that CSS is in use. | | | **schemeVersion** | supplies a version number for the style language provided in *@scheme*.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.versionNumber](#teidata.versionNumber) | | **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@schemeVersion]"> <sch:assert test="@scheme and not(@scheme = 'free')"> @schemeVersion can only be used if @scheme is specified. </sch:assert> </sch:rule> | | **Note** | If *@schemeVersion* is used, then *@scheme* should also appear, with a value other than free. | | |

## att.timed

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.timed**   provides attributes common to those elements which have a duration in time, expressed either absolutely or by reference to an alignment map. [[8.3.5. Temporal Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSBATI)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | binaryObject gap media |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **start** | indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element begins.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | **Note** | If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to follow the immediately preceding element at the same hierarchic level. | | | **end** | indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element ends.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | **Note** | If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to precede the immediately following element at the same hierarchic level. | | |

## att.transcriptional

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.transcriptional**   provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources. [[11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHAD)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | add del |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) att.written (@hand)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **status** | indicates the effect of the intervention, for example in the case of a deletion, strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or in the case of an addition, an insertion which duplicates some of the text already present.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Sample values include:** | **duplicate** all of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original, whether the duplication is word-for-word or less exact.  **duplicate-partial** part of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original  **excessStart** some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.  **excessEnd** some text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.  **shortStart** some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.  **shortEnd** some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.  **partial** some text in the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.  **unremarkable** the deletion is not faulty. [Default] | | **Note** | Status information on each deletion is needed rather rarely except in critical editions from authorial manuscripts; status information on additions is even less common.  Marking a deletion or addition as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question. | | | **cause** | documents the presumed cause for the intervention.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | | **seq** | (sequence) assigns a sequence number related to the order in which the encoded features carrying this attribute are believed to have occurred.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.count](#teidata.count) | | |

## att.translatable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.translatable**   provides attributes used to indicate the status of a translatable portion of an ODD document. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | desc gloss |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **versionDate** | specifies the date on which the source text was extracted and sent to the translator   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.temporal.w3c](#teidata.temporal.w3c) | | **Note** | The *@versionDate* attribute can be used to determine whether a translation might need to be revisited, by comparing the modification date on the containing file with the *@versionDate* value on the translation. If the file has changed, changelogs can be checked to see whether the source text has been modified since the translation was made. | | |

## att.typed

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.typed**   provides attributes which can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way. [[1.3.1. Attribute Classes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECAT) [17.1.1. Words and Above](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILCW) [3.5.1. Referring Strings](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONARS) [3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COXR) [3.5.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAB) [3.12.1. Core Tags for Verse](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COVE) [7.2.5. Speech Contents](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL) [4.1.1. Un-numbered Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDIV1) [4.1.2. Numbered Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDIV2) [4.2.1. Headings and Trailers](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSHD) [4.4. Virtual Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSVIRT) [13.3.2.3. Personal Relationships](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSREL) [11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHCO) [16.1.1. Pointers and Links](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAPTL) [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASE) [12.2. Linking the Apparatus to the Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TC.html#TCAPLK) [22.5.2. RELAX NG Content Models](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TDTAGCONT) [8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSBA) [23.3.1.4. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/USE.html#MDMDAL)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.pointing.group [altGrp joinGrp linkGrp] TEI ab add alt anchor application bibl biblStruct binaryObject c cb change charProp cit cl corr correspDesc date del desc div g gloss group head join label lb lg link listBibl listChange m mapping measureGrp media milestone name note pb pc phr ptr quote ref reg relatedItem rs s schemaRef seg teiCorpus term text time trailer w xenoData |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | <**div** **type**="verse">  <**head**>Night in Tarras</**head**>  <**lg** **type**="stanza">   <**l**>At evening tramping on the hot white road</**l**>   <**l**>…</**l**>  </**lg**>  <**lg** **type**="stanza">   <**l**>A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky</**l**>   <**l**>…</**l**>  </**lg**> </**div**> | | | **Note** | The *@type* attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of att.typed, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way. | | | **subtype** | provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Note** | The *@subtype* attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its *@type* attribute. | | |
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@subtype]"> <sch:assert test="@type">The <sch:name/> element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also categorized in general with @type</sch:assert> </sch:rule> |
| **Note** | When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used. Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the <valList> element in the project-specific schema description, as described in [23.3.1.4. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/USE.html#MDMDAL) . |

## att.written

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.written**   provides an attribute to indicate the hand in which the textual content of an element was written in the source being transcribed. [[1.3.1. Attribute Classes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECAT)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.transcriptional [add del] ab closer div head hi label note opener p postscript salute seg signed text |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **hand** | points to a <handNote> element describing the hand considered responsible for the textual content of the element concerned.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | |

# Macros

## macro.limitedContent

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.limitedContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | desc fDescr fsDescr meeting rendition tagUsage |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>   <classRef key="model.inter"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_macro.limitedContent =  ( text | [tei\_model.limitedPhrase](#TEI.tei_model.limitedPhrase) | [tei\_model.inter](#TEI.tei_model.inter) )\* |

## macro.paraContent

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.paraContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | ab add corr del docEdition emph hi imprimatur orig p ref reg salute seg sic signed title titlePart unclear |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.inter"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>   <elementRef key="lg"/>   <classRef key="model.lLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_macro.paraContent =  (  text  | [tei\_model.gLike](#TEI.tei_model.gLike) | [tei\_model.phrase](#TEI.tei_model.phrase) | [tei\_model.inter](#TEI.tei_model.inter) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) | [tei\_lg](#TEI.tei_lg) | [tei\_model.lLike](#TEI.tei_model.lLike) )\* |

## macro.phraseSeq

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.phraseSeq** (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [[1.4.1. Standard Content Models](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECST)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | abbr addrLine author biblScope citedRange cl distinct distributor docAuthor docDate edition editor email expan extent foreign geoDecl gloss headItem headLabel label measure mentioned name num phr pubPlace publisher rs s soCalled speaker street term textLang |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_macro.phraseSeq =  ( text | [tei\_model.gLike](#TEI.tei_model.gLike) | [tei\_model.phrase](#TEI.tei_model.phrase) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\* |

## macro.phraseSeq.limited

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.phraseSeq.limited** (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [[1.4.1. Standard Content Models](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECST)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | activity authority channel classCode constitution derivation domain factuality funder interaction language locale preparedness principal purpose resp span sponsor |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_macro.phraseSeq.limited =  ( text | [tei\_model.limitedPhrase](#TEI.tei_model.limitedPhrase) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\* |

## macro.specialPara

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.specialPara** ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | change item licence note q quote said stage |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.inter"/>   <classRef key="model.divPart"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_macro.specialPara =  (  text  | [tei\_model.gLike](#TEI.tei_model.gLike) | [tei\_model.phrase](#TEI.tei_model.phrase) | [tei\_model.inter](#TEI.tei_model.inter) | [tei\_model.divPart](#TEI.tei_model.divPart) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\* |

## macro.xtext

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.xtext** (extended text) defines a sequence of character data and gaiji elements. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | c mapping string value |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_macro.xtext = ( text | [tei\_model.gLike](#TEI.tei_model.gLike) )\* |

# Datatypes

## teidata.certainty

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.certainty** defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | teidata.probCertElement:   * purpose/@degree |
| **Content model** | <content>  <valList type="closed">   <valItem ident="high"/>   <valItem ident="medium"/>   <valItem ident="low"/>   <valItem ident="unknown"/>  </valList> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.certainty = "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown" |
| **Note** | Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter. |

## teidata.count

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.count** defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * refState/@length * tagUsage/@occurs * tagUsage/@withId |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger |
| **Note** | Any positive integer value or zero is permitted |

## teidata.duration.iso

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.duration.iso** defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.duration.iso = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+" } |
| **Example** | <**time** **dur-iso**="PT0,75H">three-quarters of an hour</**time**> |
| **Example** | <**date** **dur-iso**="P1,5D">a day and a half</**date**> |
| **Example** | <**date** **dur-iso**="P14D">a fortnight</**date**> |
| **Example** | <**time** **dur-iso**="PT0.02S">20 ms</**time**> |
| **Note** | A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either . or , as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first ‘time’ number-letter pair.  For complete details, see ISO 8601 *Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times*. |

## teidata.duration.w3c

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.duration.w3c** defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="duration"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.duration.w3c = xsd:duration |
| **Example** | <**time** **dur**="PT45M">forty-five minutes</**time**> |
| **Example** | <**date** **dur**="P1DT12H">a day and a half</**date**> |
| **Example** | <**date** **dur**="P7D">a week</**date**> |
| **Example** | <**time** **dur**="PT0.02S">20 ms</**time**> |
| **Note** | A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the S number, which may have a decimal component (using . as the decimal point). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first ‘time’ number-letter pair.  For complete details, see the [W3C specification](http://www.w3.org/TR/2004/REC-xmlschema-2-20041028/#duration). |

## teidata.enumerated

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.enumerated** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * abbr/@type * alt/@mode * altGrp/@mode * availability/@status * channel/@mode * constitution/@type * correction/@status * correction/@method * correspAction/@type * derivation/@type * distinct/@type * divGen/@type * domain/@type * factuality/@type * fs/@type * fsDecl/@type * gap/@reason * gap/@agent * geoDecl/@datum * hyphenation/@eol * idno/@type * interaction/@type * interaction/@active * interaction/@passive * join/@scope * list/@type * measure/@type * normalization/@method * num/@type * pc/@force * pc/@unit * preparedness/@type * punctuation/@marks * punctuation/@placement * purpose/@type * q/@type * quotation/@marks * rendition/@scope * stage/@type * timeline/@unit * title/@type * title/@level * titlePage/@type * titlePart/@type * unclear/@agent * vColl/@org * when/@unit |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef key="teidata.word"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.enumerated = [teidata.word](#TEI.teidata.word) |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘word’ which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.  Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a <valList> element. |

## teidata.interval

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.interval** defines attribute values used to express an interval value. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * timeline/@interval * when/@interval |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef name="float"/>   <valList>    <valItem ident="regular"/>    <valItem ident="irregular"/>    <valItem ident="unknown"/>   </valList>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.interval = xsd:float | ( "regular" | "irregular" | "unknown" ) |
| **Note** | Any value greater than zero or any one of the values regular, irregular, unknown. |

## teidata.language

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.language** defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [[6.1. Language Identification](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CH.html#CHSH)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * language/@ident * textLang/@mainLang * textLang/@otherLangs |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef name="language"/>   <valList>    <valItem ident=""/>   </valList>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.language = xsd:language | ( "" ) |
| **Note** | The values for this attribute are language ‘tags’ as defined in [BCP 47](https://tools.ietf.org/html/bcp47). Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 5646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice.  A ‘language tag’, per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or subtags separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.  **language** The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.  **script** The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at <http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html>. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.  **region** Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case; the list of codes can be searched or browsed at <https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/>. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm>.  **variant** An IANA-registered variation. These codes ‘are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags’.  **extension** An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. These exist to allow for future extension to BCP 47, but as of this writing no such extensions are in use.  **private use** An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter x (i.e., starts with x-) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding <language> element must be present in the TEI header.  There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the [IANA registry](http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry) that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been ‘grandfathered’ from previous specifications.  Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with x-, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding <language> element in the TEI header.  Examples include  sn Shona  zh-TW Taiwanese  zh-Hant-HK Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong  en-SL English as spoken in Sierra Leone  pl Polish  es-MX Spanish as spoken in Mexico  es-419 Spanish as spoken in Latin America  The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, [Language tags in HTML and XML](http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/Overview.en.php). |

## teidata.name

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.name** defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * application/@ident * f/@name * fDecl/@name * fsDecl/@baseTypes * index/@indexName * join/@result * joinGrp/@result * tagUsage/@gi |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="Name"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.name = xsd:Name |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits. |

## teidata.namespace

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.namespace** defines the range of attribute values used to indicate XML namespaces as defined by the W3C [Namespaces in XML](http://www.w3.org/TR/1999/REC-xml-names-19990114/) Technical Recommendation. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * namespace/@name |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="anyURI"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.namespace = xsd:anyURI |
| **Note** | The range of syntactically valid values is defined by [RFC 3986 Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax](http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3986.txt) |

## teidata.numeric

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.numeric** defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * num/@value * numeric/@value * numeric/@max |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef name="double"/>   <dataRef name="token"    restriction="(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)"/>   <dataRef name="decimal"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.numeric =  xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal |
| **Note** | Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio.  To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, ‘E notation’, a variant of ‘exponential notation’, may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3.  A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2. |

## teidata.outputMeasurement

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.outputMeasurement** defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.outputMeasurement =  token  {  pattern = "[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"  } |
| **Example** | <**figure**>  <**head**>The TEI Logo</**head**>  <**figDesc**>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters <**mentioned**>TEI</**mentioned**> in    between and <**mentioned**>text encoding initiative</**mentioned**> underneath, all on a white    background.</**figDesc**>  <**graphic** **height**="600px"   **url**="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg" **width**="600px"/> </**figure**> |
| **Note** | These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the [CSS3 working draft](http://www.w3.org/TR/2005/WD-css3-values-20050726/#numbers0). |

## teidata.pattern

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.pattern** defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.pattern = token |
| **Note** | A regular expression, often called a pattern, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings Handel, Händel, and Haendel can be described by the pattern H(ä|ae?)ndel (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern H(ä|ae?)ndel matches each of the three strings)  [Wikipedia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Regular_expression#Basic_concepts)  This TEI datatype is mapped to the XSD token datatype, and may therefore contain any string of characters. However, it is recommended that the value used conform to the particular flavour of regular expression syntax supported by XSD Schema. |

## teidata.pointer

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.pointer** defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * alt/@target * catRef/@scheme * change/@target * classCode/@scheme * f/@fVal * fs/@feats * g/@ref * gap/@hand * keywords/@scheme * note/@targetEnd * relatedItem/@target * span/@from * span/@to * timeline/@origin * unclear/@hand * w/@lemmaRef * when/@since |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="anyURI"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.pointer = xsd:anyURI |
| **Note** | The range of syntactically valid values is defined by [RFC 3986](http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3986.txt)*Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax*. Note that the values themselves are encoded using [RFC 3987](http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3987.txt)*Internationalized Resource Identifiers* (IRIs) mapping to URIs. For example, https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/% is encoded as https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25 while http://موقع.وزارة-الاتصالات.مصر/ is encoded as http://xn--4gbrim.xn----rmckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/ |

## teidata.prefix

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.prefix** defines a range of values that may function as a URI scheme name. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * prefixDef/@ident |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="[a-z][a-z0-9\+\.\-]\*"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.prefix = token { pattern = "[a-z][a-z0-9\+\.\-]\*" } |
| **Note** | This datatype is used to constrain a string of characters to one that can be used as a URI scheme name according to [RFC 3986](http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3986.txt), [section 3.1](https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3986#section-3.1). Thus only the 26 lowercase letters a–z, the 10 digits 0–9, the plus sign, the period, and the hyphen are permitted, and the value must start with a letter. |

## teidata.probCert

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.probCert** defines a range of attribute values which can be expressed either as a numeric probability or as a coded certainty value. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef key="teidata.probability"/>   <dataRef key="teidata.certainty"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.probCert = [teidata.probability](#TEI.teidata.probability) | [teidata.certainty](#TEI.teidata.certainty) |

## teidata.probability

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.probability** defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | teidata.probCertElement:   * alt/@weights |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="double"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.probability = xsd:double |
| **Note** | Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing certainly false and 1 representing certainly true. |

## teidata.replacement

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.replacement** defines attribute values which contain a replacement template. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.replacement = text |

## teidata.temporal.w3c

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.temporal.w3c** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition* specification. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * docDate/@when * when/@absolute |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef name="date"/>   <dataRef name="gYear"/>   <dataRef name="gMonth"/>   <dataRef name="gDay"/>   <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/>   <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/>   <dataRef name="time"/>   <dataRef name="dateTime"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.temporal.w3c =  xsd:date  | xsd:gYear  | xsd:gMonth  | xsd:gDay  | xsd:gYearMonth  | xsd:gMonthDay  | xsd:time  | xsd:dateTime |
| **Note** | If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used. |

## teidata.text

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.text** defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of unicode characters possibly including whitespace. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * distinct/@time * distinct/@space * distinct/@social * refState/@delim * rendition/@selector * w/@lemma |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="string"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.text = string |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘token’ in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted. |

## teidata.truthValue

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.truthValue** defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * binary/@value * fDecl/@optional * listChange/@ordered * note/@anchored * numeric/@trunc * pc/@pre * tagsDecl/@partial |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="boolean"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.truthValue = xsd:boolean |
| **Note** | The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false.  This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype: data.xTruthValue. |

## teidata.version

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.version** defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * TEI/@version * teiCorpus/@version * unicodeName/@version |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.version = token { pattern = "[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" } |
| **Note** | The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number (<http://unicode.org/versions/>). A version number contains digits and fullstop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied. |

## teidata.versionNumber

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.versionNumber** defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * application/@version |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="[\d]+[a-z]\*[\d]\*(\.[\d]+[a-z]\*[\d]\*){0,3}"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.versionNumber =  token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]\*[\d]\*(\.[\d]+[a-z]\*[\d]\*){0,3}" } |

## teidata.word

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.word** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | teidata.enumeratedElement:   * binaryObject/@encoding * m/@baseForm * media/@mimeType * symbol/@value * unclear/@reason * vLabel/@name |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.word = token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" } |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘word’ which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace. |

## teidata.xTruthValue

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.xTruthValue** (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * said/@aloud * said/@direct |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef name="boolean"/>   <valList>    <valItem ident="unknown"/>    <valItem ident="inapplicable"/>   </valList>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean | ( "unknown" | "inapplicable" ) |
| **Note** | In cases where where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype data.TruthValue. |

## teidata.xmlName

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.xmlName** defines attribute values which contain an XML name. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * schemaRef/@key |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="NCName"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.xmlName = xsd:NCName |
| **Note** | The rules defining an XML name form a part of the XML Specification. |

## teidata.xpath

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.xpath** defines attribute values which contain an XPath expression. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.xpath = text |
| **Note** | Any XPath expression using the syntax defined in <#XSLT2> |